

ENGLISH

THIRD PRIMARY

SECOND TERM

2026



Table of Contents

Module 1

Unit 1	Safety	9
	Lesson 1	10
	Lesson 2	17
	Lesson 3	23
	Lesson 4	29
	• Unit (1) Review	34
	• Unit (1) Dictation	36
	• Unit (1) Writing Corner	37
	• Unit (1) Student's Book Corner	38
	• Unit (1) Test Yourself	39
	• Unit (1) Al-Azhar Corner	41
Unit 2	Food and Health	43
	Lesson 1	44
	Lesson 2	51
	Lesson 3	58
	Lesson 4	62
	• Unit (2) Review	69
	• Unit (2) Dictation	71
	• Unit (2) Writing Corner	72
	• Unit (2) Student's Book Corner	73
	• Unit (2) Test Yourself	74
	• Unit (2) Al-Azhar Corner	76
	Al-Adwaa Revision - February	78
	Al-Adwaa Tests - February	80

Module 2

Unit 3	Heroes Around Us	84
	Lesson 1	85
	Lesson 2	93
	Lesson 3	100
	Lesson 4	105
	• Unit (3) Review	110
	• Unit (3) Dictation	111
	• Unit (3) Writing Corner	112
	• Unit (3) Student's Book Corner	113
	• Unit (3) Test Yourself	114
	• Unit (3) Al-Azhar Corner	116





Unit 4 Living with Technology

Lesson 1	118
Lesson 2	119
Lesson 3	126
Lesson 4	131
• Unit (4) Review	137
• Unit (4) Dictation	142
• Unit (4) Writing Corner	143
• Unit (4) Student's Book Corner	144
• Unit (4) Test Yourself	145
• Unit (4) Al-Azhar Corner	146
Al-Adwaa Revision - March	148
Al-Adwaa Tests - March	150

Module 3

Unit 5 Animals and Habitats

Lesson 1	156
Lesson 2	157
Lesson 3	166
Lesson 4	172
• Unit (5) Review	179
• Unit (5) Dictation	183
• Unit (5) Writing Corner	185
• Unit (5) Student's Book Corner	186
• Unit (5) Test Yourself	187
• Unit (5) Al-Azhar Corner	188

Unit 6 Story (The Honest Choice)

Vocabulary	192
Story	193
Practice on Story	195

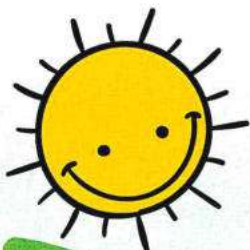
★ Final Revision and Tests (200)

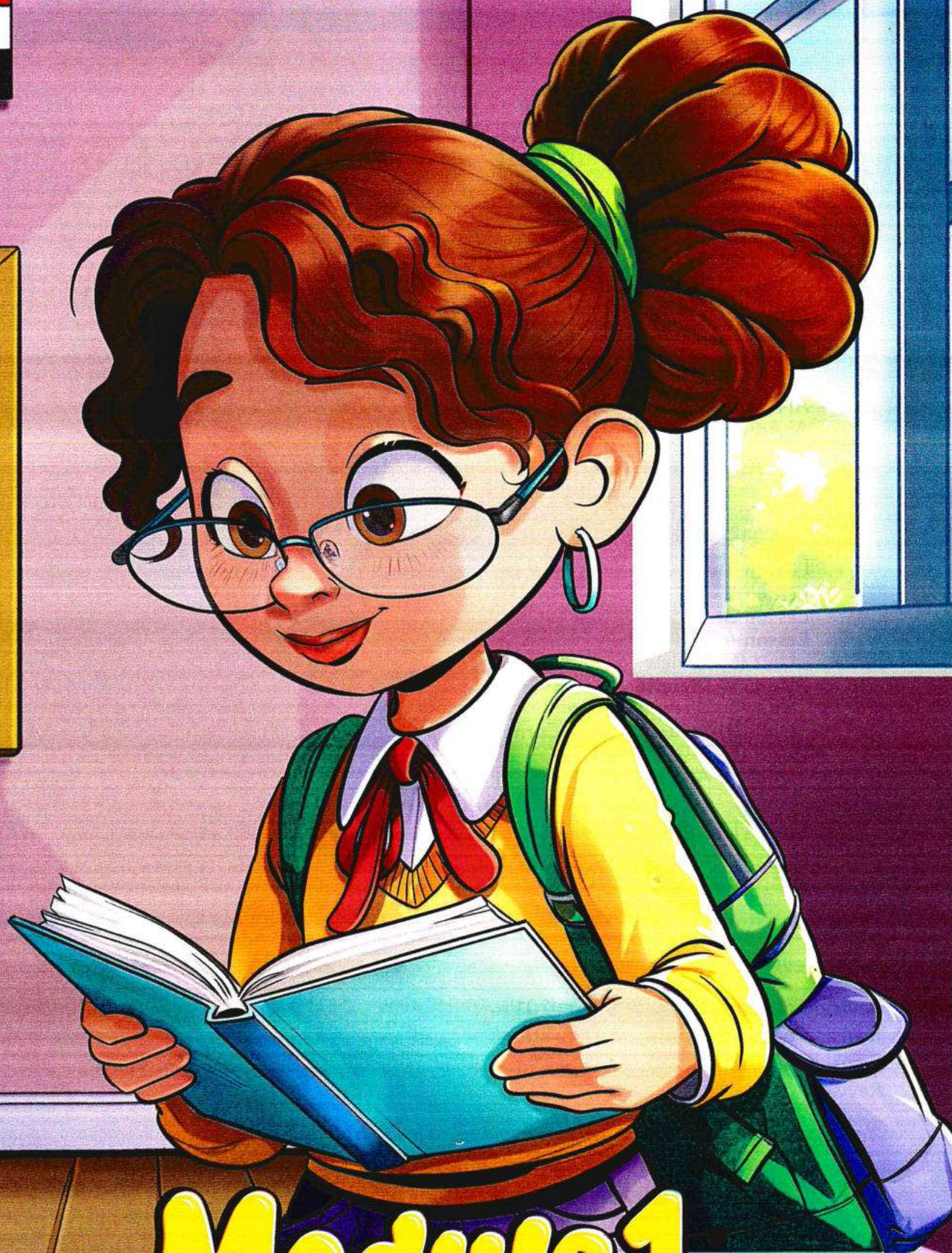
Revision on Unit 1	201	Revision on Unit 5	220
Revision on Unit 2	206	Story Corner	225
Revision on Unit 3	211	Conjugation of Verbs	228
Revision on Unit 4	215	Final Tests	230

★ Tapescripts (270)

★ Writing Answers (273)

★ Dictation Copybook (275)





Module 1

Unit 1 Safety

Unit 2 Food and Health

Unit 1

Safety

السلامة



Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- recognize instructions and commands in a short spoken text about safety.

- يتعرف على التعليمات والأوامر في نص شفهي قصير حول السلامة.

- answer basic simple questions about safety-related stories.

- يجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول قصص مرتبطة بالسلامة.

- recognize target consonant blends and key vocabulary in a listening text.

- يتعرف على مزيج الحروف الساكنة والمفردات الرئيسية في نص الاستماع.

Speaking

- use key vocabulary when speaking about safety.

- يستخدم مفردات رئيسية عند الحديث عن السلامة.

- use imperative sentences to give simple safety instructions.

- يستخدم جمل الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بسيطة متعلقة بالسلامة.

- use modals (must/mustn't) to give simple safety instructions.

- يستخدم الأفعال المساعدة (يجب/لا يجب) لإعطاء تعليمات بسيطة متعلقة بالسلامة.

Reading

- recognize key safety vocabulary in short reading texts.

- يتعرف على مفردات السلامة الرئيسية في نصوص القراءة القصيرة.

- identify imperative commands.

- يحدد صيغ الأمر.

- identify modals (must/ mustn't) in written instructions and stories.

- يحدد الأفعال المساعدة (يجب/لا يجب) في التعليمات المكتوبة والقصص.

Writing

- write simple imperative sentences using (must /mustn't) to give safety rules.

- يكتب جملاً أمرية بسيطة باستخدام (يجب/لا يجب) لتوضيح قواعد السلامة.

- write short paragraphs about personal safety experiences.

- يكتب فقرات قصيرة عن تجارب السلامة الشخصية.

- use exclamation points correctly in writing.

- يستخدم علامات التعجب بشكل صحيح في الكتابة.

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: _____ استمع، أشر وقل:



dangerous
خطير



rules
قواعد



emergency
طوارئ



careful
حريص



hurt
يؤلم - يؤذي



safe
آمن

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي توجد في الصفحات 13/11.

keep safe (v)

يبقى بأمان

That's right!

هذا صحيح

fall (v)

يقع

stay calm (v)

يبقى هادئاً

call (v)

يتصل

read (v)

يقرأ



Checkpoint

Read and match: _____ اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

careful

2

hurt

3

safe

4

rules



verb = (v) لاحظ أن فعل



Listen and read: _____ استمع واقرأ:



Mother: Ali, we have rules at home to keep us safe.

على، نحن لدينا قواعد في المنزل للحفاظ على سلامتنا.

Ali: Yes, Mom. If I follow the rules, I will not get hurt.

نعم يا أمي. إذا التزمت بالقواعد، فلن أتعرض للآذى.



Mother: That's right! Always be careful when you play.

هذا صحيح! كن حذراً دائماً أثناء اللعب.

Ali: I put my toys in the box so no one falls.

أضع ألعابي في الصندوق حتى لا يسقط أحد.



Mother: Very good. That keeps the house safe for everyone.

جيد جداً. هذا يحافظ على سلامة الجميع في المنزل.



Ali: Yes, Mom. Not following rules can be dangerous!

نعم يا أمي. عدم اتباع القواعد قد يكون خطيراً!



Mother: And in an emergency, you must stay calm and call me.

وفي حالة الطوارئ، يجب عليك أن تبقى هادئاً وتتصل بي.



Checkpoint

Read and complete: _____ اقرأ وأكمل:

(careful – dangerous – calm – hurt)

- 1 If I follow rules, I will not get
- 2 Always be when you play.
- 3 Not following rules can be
- 4 In an emergency, you must stay

B Language in Use

Imperatives

صيغ الأمر

• Imperatives are short instructions used to tell someone what to do or not to do.

• صيغ الأمر هي تعليمات صغيرة تستخدم لإخبار شخص ما يجب عليه فعله أو عدم فعله.

Use:

We use imperatives to give safety rules or warnings.

نستخدم صيغ الأمر لإعطاء قواعد السلامة أو التحذير.

Form:

• **لاحظ أن:** في حالة إعطاء الأوامر بصيغة إيجابية نستخدم الفعل في صورته الأساسية بدون أي إضافات أما في حالة إعطاء الأوامر بصيغة سلبية يتم إضافة Don't قبل الفعل في صورته الأساسية.

Positive instructions

تعليمات إيجابية

مصدر الفعل (inf.)

e.g.



Stop! توقف!

e.g.



Be careful! كن حذرا!

Negative instructions

تعليمات سلبية

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g.



Don't run! لا تجرى!

e.g.



Don't touch! لا تلمس!



Note

• **لاحظ** استخدام "exclamation point (!)" علامة التعجب في نهاية صيغة الأمر عند إعطاء الأوامر.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 (Touch – Don't touch) the cup. It's very hot.
- 2 (Eat – Don't eat) too much chocolate.
- 3 (Follow – Don't follow) the rules.
- 4 Rules (keep – don't keep) us safe.
- 5 (Keep – Don't keep) your room clean.

C Reading and Writing

Safety at Home

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

Ali was reading a book in his room.
When he finished, he left the book on the floor. His mother said, "Don't leave the book here. Someone may fall!" Ali listened to his mother and put the book back on the shelf. He followed the rules and was careful at home.



MORAL

Always follow safety rules at home to keep everyone safe.

اتبع دائماً قواعد السلامة في المنزل للحفاظ على سلامة الجميع.

كان على يقرأ كتاباً في غرفته. عندما انتهى، ترك الكتاب على الأرض. قالت له والدته: "لا تترك الكتاب هنا، فقد يسقط أحدهم!". استمع على لوالدته وأعاد الكتاب على الرف. اتبع القواعد وكان حريصاً في المنزل.



Tip!

A moral is the lesson learned from a story.

الدرس الأخلاقي هو الدرس المستفاد من القصة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
finish ينتهي	finished	(be) is يكون	was
follow يتبع	followed	leave يترك	left
listen يستمع	listened		



Checkpoint

Read and answer the questions: SB اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

- What did Ali do?
- Who told Ali not to leave the book on the floor?
- What is the moral of the text?

Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى
تتمكن من تسميعها في
نهاية الوحدة
في صفحة 36.

Look and write: _____ انظر واكتب:



dangerous



rules



emergency



careful



hurt



safe



Practice

on Lesson **1**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** Students must follow the classroom
 a) rulers b) rules c) fire
- 2** You should be when you play.
 a) emergency b) careful c) sad
- 3** In an, you should stay calm and ask for help.
 a) danger b) safe c) emergency
- 4** If you follow the rules, you will not get
 a) safe b) hurt c) careful
- 5** the toys on the floor. Someone may fall.
 a) Leave b) Don't leave c) Keep
- 6** If you fall off your bike, you might get
 a) dangerous b) hurt c) safe

Super Question ?

2 Read and complete with the words below:

اقرأ واكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(Don't - dangerous - careful)

I'm Amgad. We have some rules to stay safe at home. Always be ⁽¹⁾ when you play. ⁽²⁾ leave your toys on the floor. Put them in a box to keep the house safe for everyone. Not following the rules can be dangerous!

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Lama was playing in her room. When she finished, she left her toy on the floor. Her mother said, "Don't leave the toy here. Someone may fall!" Lama listened to her mother and put the toy back in the box. She followed the rules and was careful at home.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Lama was in her room.
 a) sleeping b) reading c) playing
- 2** Lama put the toy back in the
 a) box b) school c) pencil case

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ Where did Lama leave the toy?
- ④ What did her mother say?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- ① rules – the – Ali – followed.
- ② careful – at – home – is – She.
- ③ rules – We – have – at – home.
- ④ the house – for – safe – Keep – everyone.

5 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① yasser hurt his arm when he fell on the ground

.....

- ② where can you put your books

.....

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

"How to stay safe"
(careful – rules – dangerous)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



street

شارع



cross

يعبر الطريق



stop

قف



wait

ينتظر



walk

يمشى



helmet

خوذة



signs

إشارات / لافتات



stranger

غريب

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد في صفحة 18.

before

قبل

both ways

في كلا الاتجاهين

wear (v)

يرتدى

protect (v)

يحمي

safely

بأمان

talk to (v)

يتحدث مع



Checkpoint

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

helmet

2

walk

3

stop

4

stranger



لاحظ أن فعل (v) = verb



Listen and read: _____

استمع واقرأ: _____



Mona: What should I do before I cross the street?

ماذا يجب علي أن أفعل قبل عبور الشارع؟

Dad: You should always look both ways before you cross the street.

يجب عليك دائمًا النظر في كلا الاتجاهين قبل عبور الشارع.



Mona: Do I need to wear something when I ride my bike?

هل أحتاج أن أرتدي شيئًا ما عندما أركب دراجتي؟

Dad: Yes! Always wear a helmet to protect your head.

نعم! ارتدي خوذة دائمًا لتحمي رأسك.



Mona: How do I know where to walk safely?

كيف أعرف أين أمشي بأمان؟

Dad: Follow the signs.

اتبع اللافتات.



Mona: What if someone I don't know talks to me?

ماذا لو تحدث معي شخص لا أعرفه؟

Dad: Don't talk to strangers. Always stay safe!

لا تتحدث مع الغرباء. ابق آمنًا دائمًا!



Checkpoint

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

① stay – Always – safe!

② talk – to – Don't – strangers.

③ always – should – look – You – both ways.

B Phonics Focus

Consonants Blends



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

A consonant blend is when two or more consonants are joined together, and you can still hear each sound.

دمج الحروف الساكنة هو عندما يتم دمج حرفين ساكنين أو أكثر معًا، ولا يزال بإمكانك سماع كل صوت.

s + l "sl"
/sl/

slide	زلجة (زحليقة)
slow	بطيء
slip	ينزلق
sleep	ينام

s + t "st"
/st/

star	نجمة
stop	يتوقف
step	خطوة
stone	حجر (صخرة صغيرة)
stand	يقف

g + r "gr"
/gr/

green	أخضر
grow	ينمو
grass	حشائش
grab	ينتزع

t + r "tr"
/tr/

tree	شجرة
train	قطار
trip	رحلة
truck	شاحنة
trap	فخ



Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing letter(s):

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

① — — ee

② — — eep

③ — — ass

④ — — op

Crossing the Street Safely

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

Sama stood at the corner of the street. She saw the big red stop sign. Her father said: "Stop! Wait for the green light before you cross." Sama looked left and right. She saw cars waiting. She waited carefully and did not walk on the street. When the green light turned on, her father said, "Now, it is safe. You can cross the street." Sama walked slowly and looked both ways. She crossed the street safely. Her father smiled and said, "Well done, Sama! You followed the safety rules."



MORAL
Always follow safety rules – waiting and watching keep you safe!

اتبع دائماً قواعد السلامة - الانتظار والمراقبة
يجعلك بأمان!

وقفت سما عند زاوية الشارع. رأت إشارة التوقف الحمراء الكبيرة. قال والدها: "قف! انتظري الإشارة الخضراء قبل العبور". نظرت سما يميناً ويساراً. رأت سيارات تنتظر. انتظرت بحذر ولم تمش في الشارع. عندما أضاءت الإشارة الخضراء، قال والدها: "الآن، الوضع آمن. يمكنك عبور الشارع". سارت سما ببطء ونظرت في كلا الاتجاهين. عبرت الشارع بأمان. ابتسم والدها وقال: "أحسن! يا سما! لقد التزمت بقواعد السلامة".

Vocabulary

corner of the street زاوية الشارع green light الإشارة الخضراء Well done! أحسنت!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
wait	ينتظر	waited	يَقِف
look	ينظر	looked	يَرى
turn on	يشغل	turned on	يَقول
cross	يعبر	crossed	



Practice

on Lesson **2**



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): ————— استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

① — —ain

② — —ip

③ — —ab

④ — —ep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

① You must wear a when you ride a bike.

a) helmet

b) hat

c) cap

② Look both ways before you the street.

a) wait

b) cross

c) stop

③ Children should not talk to

a) parents

b) strangers

c) teachers

④ The grass is

a) green

b) grab

c) grow

⑤ Be careful! You might on the ice. **SB**

a) slip

b) trap

c) step

⑥ The teacher told us to for the bus.



a) walk

b) wait

c) cross

3 Read and complete with the words below: ————— اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(wear – cross – street)

When we go outside, we see many cars on the street. We should always look both ways before we ⁽¹⁾ the street. Always ⁽²⁾ a helmet to protect your head. To know where to walk safely, you can follow the signs.



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Vocabulary

policeman	ضابط الشرطة	seat belt	حزام الأمان	ambulance	سيارة الإسعاف
sick people	المرضى	hospital	مستشفى	first aid	الإسعافات الأولية
injured	الجرحي				

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

The **policeman** keeps us safe.

رجل الشرطة يحافظ على سلامتنا.

Wear the **seat belt** in the car.

ارتدى حزام الأمان في السيارة.

The **ambulance** takes sick people to the hospital.

تنقل سيارة الإسعاف المرضى إلى المستشفى.

**First aid** helps injured people.

الإسعافات الأولية تساعد الأشخاص المصابين.



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(policeman – First aid – ambulance)

- 1 The keeps us safe.
- 2 The takes sick people to the hospital.
- 3 helps injured people.

B Language in Use

Modals for Rules

We use "must" and "mustn't" to talk about rules. They tell us what we must do and what we cannot do.

نستخدم "must" و "mustn't" للتحدث عن القواعد. فإنهما يحددان لنا ما يجب علينا فعله وما لا يجب علينا فعله.

Form:

"must"

Use "must" to say something is very important or necessary.

للتحدث عن شيء هام جدًا أو ضروري (واجب علينا فعله).

... . الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + must

e.g.



You **must wear** a helmet when riding a bike.

يجب أن ترتدي خوذة عندما تركب دراجتك.

"mustn't"

Use "mustn't" to say something is not allowed.

للتحدث عن شيء غير مسموح (لا يجب علينا فعله).

... . الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + mustn't

e.g.



You **mustn't run** in the street.

يجب ألا تجري في الشارع.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب المفردات اللغوية.

- 1 You (must – mustn't) follow the rules to stay safe.
- 2 We (must – mustn't) shout in the library.
- 3 They (must – mustn't) study for their exams.
- 4 She (must – mustn't) listen to her teacher.
- 5 You (must – mustn't) leave your toys on the floor. **SB**

C Story

Help is Here!

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

Lina was in the kitchen when she saw some smoke near the stove. She felt a little scared but remembered the safety rule: "You **must** call an adult if something doesn't seem right." Lina quickly called her mother from the other room and said, "Mom, there's smoke in the kitchen!" Her mother came right away and turned off the stove. She checked everything and made sure it was safe. Lina stayed calm and didn't go near the stove. Her mother smiled and said, "Good job, Lina! You did the right thing."



MORAL

Stay calm in an emergency, and ask for help when needed.

حافظ على هدوئك في حالة الطوارئ، واطلب المساعدة عندما تكون في حاجة إليها.

كانت لينا في المطبخ عندما رأت دخانًا يتصاعد قرب الموقد. شعرت ببعض الخوف، لكنها تذكرت قاعدة السلامة: "يجب عليك الاتصال بشخص بالغ إذا شعرت بأي شيء غير طبيعي". اتصلت لينا بوالدتها بسرعة من الغرفة الأخرى وقالت: "أمي، هناك دخان في المطبخ!". جاءت والدتها على الفور وأطفأت الموقد. فحصت كل شيء وتأكدت من سلامته. ظلت لينا هادئة ولم تقترب من الموقد. ابتسمت والدتها وقالت: "أحسنيت يا لينا! فعلت الشيء الصواب".

Vocabulary

smoke	دخان	stove	موقد	scared	خائف
adult	شخص بالغ	seem right (v)	يبدو صحيحًا	quickly	سريعًا
right away	في الحال / على الفور	Good job!	أحسنيت!		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

remember	يتذكر
call	يتصل
turn off	يغلق
check	يفحص

Past

remembered
called
turned off
checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

come	يأتي
make sure	يتأكد
do	يفعل
feel	يشعر

Past

came
made sure
did
felt



Checkpoint

Read and answer: **SB**

اقرأ وأجب:

1 Where was Lina when she saw smoke?

.....

2 Who did Lina call for help?

.....

3 What did Lina's mother do?

.....

4 What did Lina do when she saw the smoke?

.....

D Listening and Speaking



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Student A: What should you do if there is an emergency?

ماذا يجب أن تفعل في حالة حدوث طوارئ؟

Student B: I should call for help and stay safe. يجب أن أطلب المساعدة وأبقى آمناً.

Student A: Who can you call for help? من يمكنك أن تتصل به لطلب المساعدة؟

Student B: I can call my parents or the emergency number 122.

يمكنني الاتصال بالوالدين أو برقم الطوارئ 122.



Practice

on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Always wear your in the car.

a) bag

b) helmet

c) seat belt

2 The keeps us safe.

a) nurse

b) policeman

c) driver

3 The takes sick people to the hospital.

a) ambulance

b) teacher

c) friend

4 You be kind to your friends.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) can't

SB

5 We sleep late.

a) come

b) must

c) mustn't

6 helps injured people.

a) Helmet

b) First aid

c) Teachers

7 You wash your hands before eating.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) shouldn't

8 Omar do his homework.

a) is

b) mustn't

c) must

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:



olicepnam



ancelubam



italhosp

Let's Stay Safe

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Tia and Sally are friends. One day, they went outside to play. Before they left the house, Tia said, "Remember, safety comes first. You must wear your helmet when you ride your bike." Sally nodded and said, "Yes, and you mustn't talk to strangers. If there is an emergency, you must call for help." As they walked to the park, Sally saw a stop sign. She said, "Stop! Wait for the green light before you cross the street." Tia looked both ways and said, "Be careful! Don't run near the street." Tia smiled, "This is our safety guide. We must always follow these rules to stay safe."



تيا وسالي أصدقاء. في أحد الأيام، خرجتا للعب. قبل أن تغادرا المنزل، قالت تيا: "تذكرى، السلامة أولاً. يجب عليك ارتداء خوذةك عند ركوب دراجتك. أومأت سالي وقالت: "أجل، ويجب عليك عدم التحدث مع الغرباء. في حالة الطوارئ، عليك طلب المساعدة". وبينما هما تسيران إلى الحديقة، رأت سالي إشارة توقف. قالت: "قف! انتظري الإشارة الخضراء قبل عبور الشارع". نظرت تيا في كلا الاتجاهين وقالت: "انتبهى! لا تجرى بالقرب من الشارع". ابتسمت تيا وقالت: "هذا دليل السلامة الخاص بنا. يجب علينا دائماً اتباع هذه القواعد لنبقى آمنين".

Vocabulary

safety comes first

السلامة تأتي أولاً

call for help (v)

يطلب المساعدة

safety guide

دليل السلامة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

nod يومئ برأسه (يهز رأسه
تعبيراً عن الموافقة)

nodd

talk يتحدث

talked

walk يمشى

walked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

go

يذهب

went

wear

يرتدى

wore

leave

يترك

left

B Language in Use

Punctuation: Exclamation point (!)

▶ **Read and notice:** اقرأ ولاحظ:

 **Exclamation point** علامة التعجب

- We use an exclamation point "!" :

① After instructions that are very important. - بعد التعليمات الهامة جدًا.

e.g. Stop! Don't run! Watch out!

② To show strong feelings like surprise, excitement, or warning.

- إظهار مشاعر قوية مثل المفاجأة أو الإثارة أو التحذير.

e.g. That's amazing! Watch out!

✓ **Checkpoint** 1. Add exclamation points where needed: **SB** ضع علامات التعجب في الجمل التي تحتاج لعلامة تعجب:

① It is sunny today

② I like ice cream

③ She has a book

④ Hurry up

⑤ That's delicious

⑥ This is my pencil

2. Put the correct punctuation marks (! - .) : ضع علامات الترقيم الصحيحة:

① Be careful

② Hazem has a pencil

③ Well done

④ She likes chocolate

C Writing

Safety Guide Poster

Read and notice: _____ اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to design a poster.

كيف تصمم ملصقاً.

- 1 Write at least 5 safety rules using **must** and **mustn't**.
اكتب خمس قواعد سلامة على الأقل باستخدام "يجب" و"لا يجب".
- 2 Draw important safety equipment (like helmets or phones).
ارسم معدات السلامة المهمة (مثل الخوذات أو الهواتف).
- 3 Write a short sentence for each rule (e.g., "You must wear a helmet.").
اكتب جملة قصيرة لكل قاعدة (مثل: "يجب ارتداء خوذة").
- 4 Show your poster to your classmates and talk about your safety rules!
اعرض ملصقك على زملائك في الصف وتحدث عن قواعد السلامة!



You **mustn't run** on the street.



You **must wait** for the green light before you cross the street.



You **must wear** a helmet when you ride your bike.



You **mustn't talk** to strangers.



In an emergency, you **must call** for help.



Practice

on Lesson **4**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** Be careful! Don't run near the
a) house b) street c) park
- 2** If there is an, you must call for help.
a) emergency b) helmet c) animal
- 3** You use your phone while driving*.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
- 4** You mustn't talk to
a) friends b) a stranger c) your teacher
- 5** We must follow the to stay safe.
a) rules b) street c) stop
- 6** We must wear a when we ride a bike.
a) cap b) helmet c) T-shirt

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(green – sign – careful)

Adam and Nour were walking on the street. On their way, they saw a stop sign. Adam said, "Stop! Wait for the ⁽¹⁾..... light before you cross." Nour looked both ways and said, "Be ⁽²⁾.....! Don't run near the street." Then Adam smiled, "We must always follow these rules to stay safe."

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nora and Hana went out to ride their bikes. Before they left, Nora said, "Safety comes first. You must wear your helmet every time." Hana nodded, "Yes, and you mustn't talk to strangers. If there's an emergency, you must call for help." They both smiled and said, "We must follow these rules to stay safe."

* القيادة.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- ① Nora and Hana went out to ride their
a) cars b) camels c) bikes
- ② They said, "We must follow these rules to stay".
a) safe b) strong c) scared

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ Where did Nora and Hana go?
- ④ What did Nora say before they left?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- ① call — You — must — help — for. (SB)
.....
- ② run — near — Don't — the — street.
.....
- ③ doesn't — strangers — talk — Farida — to.
.....
- ④ wait — must — light — for — You — the green. (SB)
.....

5 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① tia and sally are friends.
- ② watch out

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

"Staying safe"

(follow — talk — emergency)

.....

.....

.....

Unit 1 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى
تمكين الطالب من
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء
التي وردت في الوحدة.

Lesson (1)

dangerous	خطير	rules	قواعد	emergency	طوارئ
careful	حريص	hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	safe	آمن

Lesson (2)

street	شارع	cross	يعبر الطريق	stop	يتوقف
wait	ينتظر	walk	يمشي	helmet	خوذة
signs	إشارات / لافتات	stranger	غريب	protect	يحمي

Lesson (3)

policeman	ضابط الشرطة	seat belt	حزام الأمان	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف
first aid	الإسعافات الأولية	smoke	دخان	stove	الموقد

Lesson (4)

safety comes first	السلامة تأتي أولاً	call for help	يطلب المساعدة	safety guide	دليل السلامة
--------------------	--------------------	---------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

Phonics Focus

s + l "sl"
/sl/

slide	زلاجة (زحليقة)
slow	بطيء
slip	ينزلق
sleep	ينام

s + t "st"
/st/

star	نجمة
stop	يتوقف
step	خطوة
stone	حجر (صخرة صغيرة)
stand	يقف

g + r "gr"
/gr/

green	أخضر
grow	ينمو
grass	حشائش
grab	ينتزع

t + r "tr"
/tr/

tree	شجرة
train	قطار
trip	رحلة
truck	شاحنة
trap	فخ

Language in Use:

Imperatives

صيغ الأمر

Positive instructions

تعليمات إيجابية

مصدر الفعل (inf.)

e.g.



Stop! توقف!

Negative instructions

تعليمات سلبية

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g.



Don't run! لا تجرى!

Modals for Rules

"must"

Use "must" to say something is very important or necessary.

للتحدث عن شيء هام جدًا أو ضروري (واجب علينا فعله).

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) must +

e.g.



You must wear a helmet when riding a bike.

يجب أن ترتدي خوذة عندما تركب دراجتك.

"mustn't"

Use "mustn't" to say something is not allowed.

للتحدث عن شيء غير مسموح (لا يجب علينا فعله).

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) mustn't +

e.g.



You mustn't run in the street.

يجب ألا تجرى في الشارع.

Unit 1 Dictation



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

اقرأ واكتب: Read and write:

	الكلمة باللغة العربية	الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية	
Lesson (1)	dangerous	خطير	حالة طوارئ
	hurt	ألم	يبقى هادئاً
	careful	حذر	قواعد
	safe	آمن	يتبع
Lesson (2)	street	شارع	في كلا الاتجاهين
	wait	انتظر	يعبر
	stranger	مجهول	يمشي
	stone	حجر	يحمي
	signs	إشارات	خطوة
	stop	توقف	بأمان
	grab	أخذ	خوذة
	truck	شاحنة	يتحدث مع
Lessons (3 & 4)	grow	نمو	شجرة
	policeman	موظف أمن	أمن
	first aid	إسعاف أولي	سيارة الإسعاف
	sick people	مرضى	الجرحي
	seat belt	حزام أمان	شخص بالغ
	smoke	دخان	موقد
	call for help	طلب المساعدة	إرشادات الأمان



تتضمن هذه الصفحة
تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Tip1:

ابدأ الجملة أو أسماء الأشخاص
بحرف كبير "Capital letter".

"Safety in the street"
(careful – wait – follow)

Tip2:

ضع period (full stop) في نهاية
الجملة.

When you walk in the street, you must be careful! Always stop and wait before you cross the road. Look at the signs and follow them.

Tip3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وواضح وتأكد من كتابتك للكلمات
بشكل صحيح (correct spelling).

Tip4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في
كتابة جمل صحيحة.

"How to stay safe at home"

(stove – fall – adult)

You must be careful at home. Don't touch the stove. Don't leave any toys on the floor, someone may fall. You must call an adult if there is an emergency.

"Helping my family at home"

(hurt – safe – ambulance)

My mother fell and got hurt. I made sure she was safe. I called the ambulance. I learned it is good to help my family.

Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Staying safe in the street"

(cross – helmet – sign)

.....

.....

.....



Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the action to the correct person/object: — صل الفعل بالشخص/الشيء الصحيح:

Action	Person/ Object
① Takes sick people to the hospital	seat belt
② Keeps us safe	ambulance
③ Protects us in the car	policeman
④ Helps the injured	first aid

2 Fill in the blanks using words from the box: — املاً الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(mustn't – must – emergency – Stop – follow – helmet)

- ① You wear a when riding a bike.
- ② You talk to strangers.
- ③ Sally said, "..... and wait for the green light."
- ④ If there is an, you must call for help.
- ⑤ To stay safe, you must the rules.

3 Reorder the words to make a sentence: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملة:

- ① wear – must – helmet – You – a.
- ② call – help – must – for – You.
- ③ mustn't – run – You – near – street – the.
- ④ wait – must – light – for – You – green – the.
- ⑤ mustn't – talk – to – strangers – You.



Test yourself

30

Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s):

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 --ow

2 --op

3 --ap

4 --ab

Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

1 You eat too much candy.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) can

2 Always wear a helmet to your head.

a) protect

b) touch

c) move

3 It is to talk to strangers.

a) safe

b) easy

c) dangerous

4 You wear the seat belt in a car.

a) can't

b) must

c) mustn't

5 My mom gave me when I hurt my finger.

a) first aid

b) sign

c) homework

6 You run in the street.

a) can

b) must

c) mustn't

3 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(wait – careful – helmet)

I'm Ahmed. I always wear a helmet when riding my bike. I am very
(1) on the street. I (2) for the green light. I never talk
to a stranger.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3

1



urht

2



tsrrenga

3



fsea

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

It is important to stay safe on the street. Always stop at the red sign and look both ways before you cross. Not following the rules can be very dangerous. Following the safety rules helps everyone stay safe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Always at the red sign.
a) run b) stop c) walk
- 2** Not following the rules can be very
a) safe b) easy c) dangerous

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ What should you do before you cross the road?
- ④ Why should we follow the rules?

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 1

- ① us – safe – The policeman – keeps.
- ② aid – injured – help – can – First – people.

7 Punctuate the following: _____ **ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:** **4**

- ① don't talk to strangers
- ② who can you call for help

8 Write a paragraph of **THREE** sentences (15 words) using words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

7

مجاہد عنہ آخر الكتاب.

“Safety guide”

(helmet – call – seat belt)



A. Language Functions



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: — استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Omar was riding his (car – bike – motorbike).
- 2 Omar wore his (cap – seat belt – helmet).
- 3 He saw a (red – pink – green) sign and stopped.

B. Reading

2 Fill in the missing letters: — املأ الحروف الناقصة:

1



d_nge_ous

2



e_er_ency

3



h_l_et

4



s_ _p

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Don't forget to use (helmet – first aid – bag) for small injuries.
- 2 You (must – mustn't – shouldn't) wash your hands before eating.
- 3 Always tell a/an (baby – stranger – adult) if you are hurt.
- 4 You (must – mustn't – should) use your phone while driving.

D. Writing

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 the ambulance came quickly

2 don't cross the street alone

5 Reorder the words to form correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

1 safe – The policeman – us – keeps.

2 talk – strangers – to – Don't.

3 mustn't – touch – You – things – hot.

4 should – I – for – call – help.

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

6

“Safety in the street”

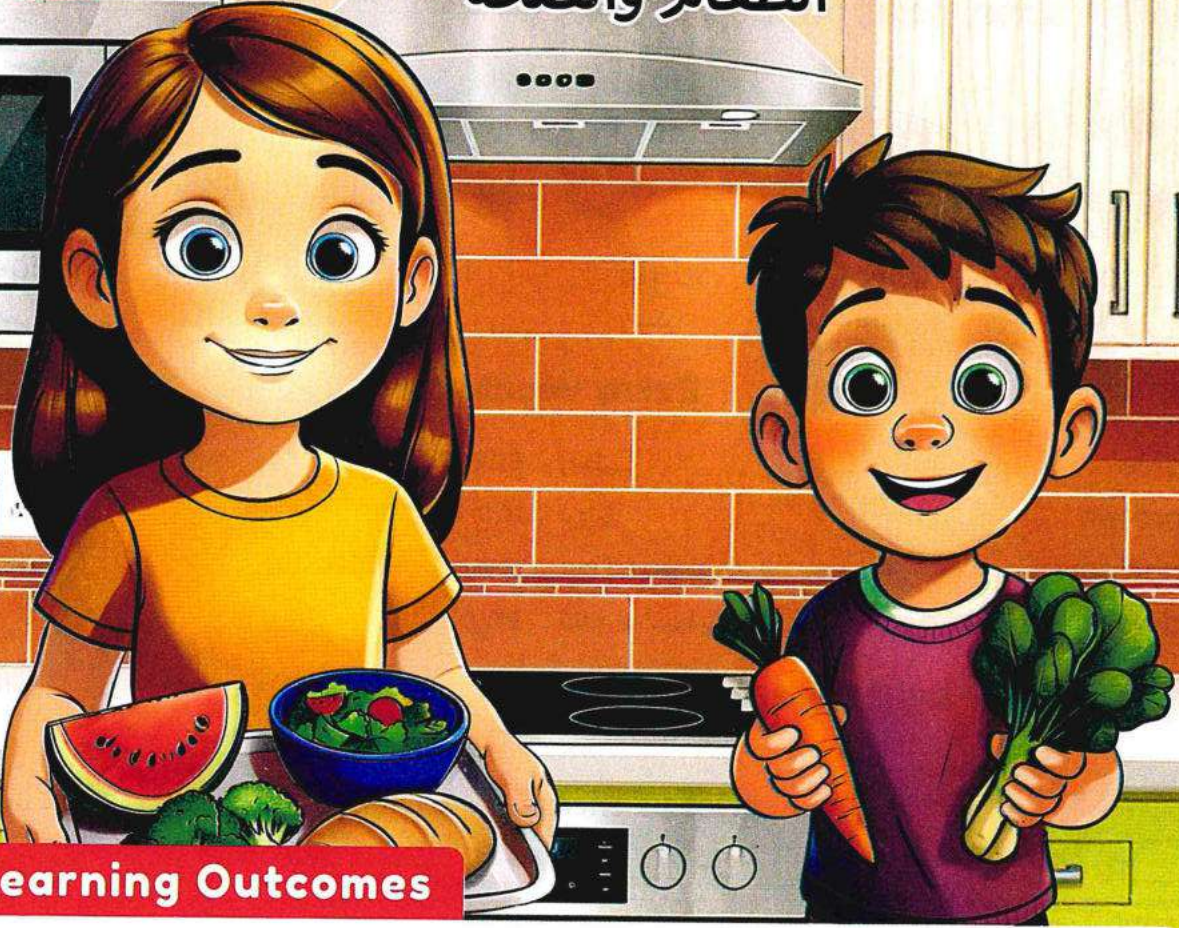
(dangerous – cross – stranger)

Unit

2

Food and Health

الطعام والصحة



Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- show understanding of short stories and conversations about food, health, and hygiene when listened to. - يظهر الفهم للقصص القصيرة والمحادثات حول الطعام، الصحة والنظافة عند الاستماع إليها.
- recognize vocabulary words related to food, health, and hygiene in listening activities. - يتعرف على كلمات المفردات المتعلقة بالطعام، الصحة، والنظافة في أنشطة الاستماع.
- follow simple instructions related to healthy habits. - يتبع تعليمات بسيطة متعلقة بالعادات الصحية.

Speaking

- use common basic vocabulary related to food and health. - يستخدم مفردات أساسية شائعة متعلقة بالطعام والصحة.
- answer simple questions about food preferences and healthy habits in oral discussion. - يجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول التفضيلات الغذائية والعادات الصحية في مناقشات شفوية.
- use reflexive pronouns in spoken sentences accurately. - يستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بدقة في الجمل المنطوقة.

Reading

- recognize basic vocabulary related to food, health, and hygiene. - يتعرف على المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بالطعام، الصحة والنظافة.
- answer simple comprehension questions about food, health, and hygiene. - يجيب عن أسئلة فهم بسيطة حول الطعام، الصحة والنظافة.
- identify healthy and unhealthy foods in short written texts. - يتعرف على الأطعمة الصحية وغير الصحية في نصوص قصيرة مكتوبة.

Writing

- write short, correct sentences with food, health, and hygiene vocabulary. - يكتب جملًا قصيرة وصحيحة باستخدام مفردات الطعام، الصحة والنظافة.
- write short paragraphs describing meals, healthy habits, and personal preferences. - يكتب فقرات قصيرة تصف الوجبات، العادات الصحية والتفضيلات الشخصية.
- use reflexive pronouns correctly in writing. - يستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بشكل صحيح في الكتابة.

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: _____ استمع، أشر وقل:



food
طعام



meat
لحم



sugar
سكر



fruits
فاكهة



water
ماء



vegetables
خضراوات

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي
توجد في صفحات 45/47

give (v)

يعطى

energy

طاقة

protein

بروتين

too much

الكثير من

bad for

سيئ لـ / ضار لـ

stay hydrated (v)

يبقى مرويًّا (مترطب)

dress herself (v)

ترتدى ملابسها بنفسها

enjoy (v)

يستمتع

Important sentences

جمل هامة:



Food gives us energy.

- الطعام يعطينا الطاقة.



Meat gives us protein.

- اللحم يعطينا البروتين.



Too much sugar is bad for your body.

- الكثير من السكر ضار لجسمك.



I eat fruits every day.

- أنا أكل الفاكهة كل يوم.



Water keeps us healthy.

- الماء يحافظ على صحتنا.



We must eat vegetables.

- يجب علينا أن نأكل الخضراوات.

لاحظ (v) = فعل

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Food gives us energy to play, learn, and grow. Different foods give us different kinds of energy. Meat gives our body protein to make us **strong**⁽¹⁾. Fruits and vegetables give us **vitamins**⁽²⁾ to keep us healthy. They also help us **fight**⁽³⁾ **sickness**⁽⁴⁾. Sugar gives us quick energy, but too much sugar is not good for our health. Water is very important because it helps our body work well. When we eat the right food and drink enough water, we have good energy every day.



(1) قوى

(2) الفيتامينات

(3) يحارب/ يقاوم

(4) المرض

الطعام يمنحنا الطاقة لنلعب ونتعلم وننمو، كما أن كل نوع من الأطعمة يزودنا بنوع مختلف من الطاقة. فاللحوم تمنح أجسامنا البروتين الذي يجعلنا أقوىاء، بينما تقدّم لنا الفواكه والخضراوات الفيتامينات التي تحافظ على صحتنا وتساعدنا على مقاومة المرض. أما السكر فيعطينا طاقة سريعة، لكن الإكثار منه ليس جيدًا لصحتنا. ويُعد الماء عنصرًا مهمًا جدًا لأنه يساعد جسمنا على أداء وظيفته بشكل جيد. وعندما نتناول الطعام المناسب ونشرب كمية كافية من الماء، نحصل على طاقة جيدة كل يوم.



Checkpoint

Read and answer:

اقرأ وأجب:

SB

1 What does food give us?

2 What helps us fight sickness?

3 When is sugar unhealthy?

4 How does protein help us?

5 How do we have good energy every day?

B Language in Use

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- We use "reflexive pronouns" when the subject and the object are the same person.
- نستخدم "الضمائر المنعكسة" عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول به نفس الشخص.

Pronouns الضمائر	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة	Example
I أنا	myself	I can make a sandwich by myself . أنا أستطيع أن أعد الساندوتش بنفسى.
You أنت/ أتما	yourself yourselves	You can wash yourself . يمكنك أن تغتسل بنفسك. Take care of yourselves , girls. اعتنين بأنفسكن، يا فتيات.
He هو (مفرد مذكر)	himself	He dresses himself . هو يرتدى بنفسه.
She هى (مفرد مؤنث)	herself	She looks at herself in the mirror. هى تنظر إلى نفسها فى المرآة.
It هو/هى لغير العاقل	itself	The cat cleans itself . القطّة تنظف نفسها.
We نحن	ourselves	We built the tent ourselves . بنينا الخيمة بأنفسنا.
They هم	themselves	The kids made salad themselves . أعد الأطفال السلطة بأنفسهم.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

- 1 He made this cake by (myself – herself – himself).
- 2 The girl dressed (myself – herself – himself).
- 3 They cooked rice by (yourself – themselves – herself).
- 4 You should take care of (yourself – itself – myself).

C Reading

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



MORAL



Eat healthy food and drink water to have energy for the day.

كُل طعامًا صحيًا واشرب الماء لتحصل على الطاقة طوال اليوم.

Seleem wakes up early. He washes **himself** and smiles. "I am hungry," he says. Seleem eats fruit and vegetables for breakfast. He drinks water to stay hydrated. Later, Seleem plays football with his friends. He runs fast and feels strong. At lunch, he eats meat and rice. Seleem says to himself, "I have so much energy!" His sister Leila wakes up and dresses **herself**. She tells herself to eat slowly. She enjoys bread and cheese with a glass of milk. Their friend Omar makes a salad for himself.

يستيقظ سليم مبكرًا، يغتسل بنفسه ويبتسم. يقول: "أنا جائع". يتناول سليم الفاكهة والخضراوات على الإفطار. يشرب الماء ليبقى محافظًا على رطوبة جسمه. لاحقًا، يلعب سليم كرة القدم مع أصدقائه. يجري بسرعة ويشعر بقوة. في الغداء، يأكل اللحم والأرز. يقول سليم لنفسه: "لدي طاقة كبيرة!" تستيقظ أخته ليلى وتلبس ملابسها بنفسها. وتقول لنفسها أن تأكل ببطء. تستمتع بالخبز والجبن مع كوب من الحليب. صديقهما عمر يُعدّ سلطة لنفسه.

✓ Checkpoint Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

① dresses – herself – **My** – sister.

② eats – and vegetables – **He** – fruits.

③ makes – **Omar** – for himself – salad.

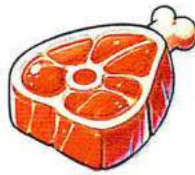
Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى
تتمكن من تسميعها في
نهاية الوحدة
في صفحة 71.

▶ Look and write: انظر واكتب:



food



meat



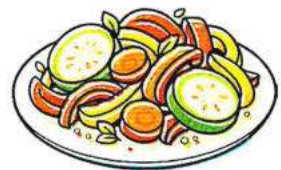
sugar



fruits



water



vegetables



Practice

on Lesson

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Too much is bad for your body. (SB)

a) water

b) meat

c) sugar

2 She makes salad by

a) herself

b) themselves

c) ourselves

3 My mother cooks for dinner.

a) energy

b) meat

c) water

4 I eat like apples and bananas.

a) fruits

b) vegetables

c) meat

5 We must drink to stay healthy.

a) sweets

b) sugar

c) water

6 I like to eat food every day.

a) bad

b) water

c) healthy

7 We clean our room by

Super Question



a) herself

b) themselves

c) ourselves

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(vegetables – protein – eat)

I take care of myself. I ⁽¹⁾ healthy food. I eat ⁽²⁾ like carrots every day. I also eat fruits like apples and bananas. Meat gives us protein.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Eating healthy food makes us strong. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins. Meat gives our body protein to make us strong. Healthy food also helps us fight sickness. Too much sugar is not good for our health. Drinking water is very important because it helps our body work well.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 Eating healthy food makes us

a) bad

b) angry

c) strong

2 Too much sugar is for our health.

a) good

b) healthy

c) not good

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do fruits and vegetables give us?

4 What is the importance of water?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 cat – itself – cleans – The.

.....

2 myself – I – a cake – make – by.

.....

3 day – fruits – I – every – eat.

.....

4 enjoys – cheese – She – and – bread.

.....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 water keeps us healthy

2 what is your favorite food

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

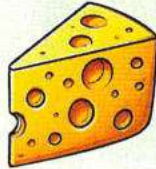
استمع، أشر وقل:

Healthy Food



milk

لبن



cheese

جبنة



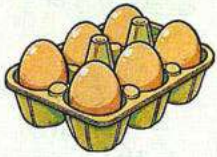
rice

أرز



nuts

مكسرات



eggs

بيض



bread

خبز



chicken

دجاج



fish

سمك

Important sentences

جمل هامة:



Milk is good for our bones.

- اللبن جيد لعظامنا.



Cheese is rich in calcium.

- الجبن غنى بالكالسيوم.



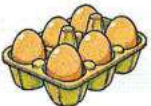
Rice gives us energy.

- الأرز يعطينا الطاقة.



Nuts are a good source of fats.

- المكسرات مصدر جيد للدهون.



Eggs are full of protein.

- البيض ممتلئ بالبروتين.



Bread is rich in carbohydrates.

- الخبز غنى بالكربوهيدرات.



Chicken is tasty and healthy.

- الدجاج طعمه لذيذ وصحي.



Fish helps our brains grow.

- السمك يساعد عقولنا في النمو.

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي توجد في صفحات 53/54

good for
calcium
tasty
oil

مفيد لـ
كالسيوم
لذيذ/شهى
زيت

bones
fats
brain

عظام
دهون
عقل

rich in
carbohydrates
salty

غنى بـ
الكربوهيدرات
مالح

Unhealthy Food



sweets
حلوى



soda
صودا



chips
بطاطس الشيبسى



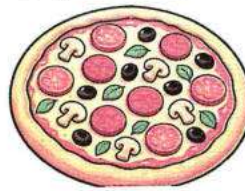
fries
بطاطس محمرة



cookies
بسكويت (كوكيز)



cake
تورته (كيك)



pizza
بيتزا



lollipops
مصاصات

Important sentences

جمل هامة:



Sweets are bad for our teeth.

- الحلويات ضارة بأسناننا.



Soda has too much sugar.

- الصودا تحتوى على الكثير من السكر.



Chips are salty snacks.

- رقائق البطاطس وجبات خفيفة مالحة.



Fries are cooked in oil.

- البطاطس المحمرة تطهى فى الزيت.



Cookies are not healthy snacks.

- البسكويت (الكوكيز) وجبات خفيفة غير صحية.



Cake is not good for your body.

- التورته (الكيك) غير جيدة لجسمك.



Pizza has too much fat and salt.

- البيتزا بها الكثير من الدهون والملح.



Lollipops are just sugar.

- المصاصات ليست سوى سكر.



Listen and read: _____

استمع واقرأ:



Maya: Good morning, Salma! What do you usually eat for breakfast?

صباح الخير، سلمى! ماذا تأكلين عادةً على الفطور؟

Salma: I usually eat eggs and drink a glass of milk. They give me energy. What about you?

عادةً أكل البيض وأشرب كوبًا من الحليب. إنهما يمنحاني الطاقة. ماذا عنك؟



Maya: Hmm... I like cake and soda.

امممم... أنا أحب الكيك والصودا.

Salma: Really? Cake and soda in the morning?

حقًا؟ الكيك والصودا في الصباح؟



Maya: Yes, but I know they aren't very healthy.

نعم، لكنني أعلم أنهما ليسا صحيين جدًا.

Salma: You're right. Eggs and milk are healthy, but cake and soda are not good for you.

معك حق. البيض والحليب صحيان، لكن الكيك والصودا ليسا مفيدتين لك.



Maya: True. So, what do you eat for lunch?

صحيح. إذًا، ماذا تأكلين على الغداء؟

Salma: I often eat chicken and nuts. They help me stay strong.

غالبًا ما أكل الدجاج والمكسرات. إنهما تساعدني على البقاء قوية.



Maya: That sounds good! I usually eat pizza and fries.

يبدو ذلك جيدًا! أنا عادةً أكل البيتزا والبطاطس المقلية.

Salma: Pizza and fries are tasty, but not healthy every day.

البيتزا والبطاطس المقلية لذيذتان، لكنهما ليستا صحيّتين كل يوم.



Maya: Yeah, maybe I'll try chicken and nuts instead.

نعم، ربما سأجرب الدجاج والمكسرات بدلاً من ذلك.



Checkpoint

1. Choose the correct answer: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب المفردات اللغوية.

- ① (Rice – Bread – Milk) is good for our bones.
- ② Eggs are full of (sugar – protein – salt).
- ③ Fish helps our (brain – feet – teeth) grow.
- ④ (Fish – Meat – Cookies) are not healthy snacks.
- ⑤ Cake is not (bad – good – unhealthy) for your body.
- ⑥ Pizza has too much (calcium – protein – fat) and salt.

2. Read and answer: _____ اقرأ وأجب:

- ① What does Salma usually eat and drink for breakfast?

.....

- ② Who usually eats pizza and fries?

.....

- ③ What food does Salma eat for lunch to stay strong?

.....

B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

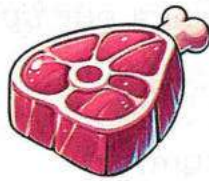
Both "ea" and "ee" make the long /i:/ sound:

كلا الحرفين "ea" و "ee" يصدران صوت /i:/ الطويل:

ea /i:/



eat
يأكل



meat
لحمة



beans
فول

ee /i:/



sweet
حلو



see
يرى



cheese
جبنة



green
أخضر



Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing letter(s):

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

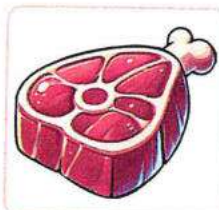
للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1



ch__se

2



m__t

3



gr__n

4



b__ns



Practice

on Lesson

2

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s):

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

_ _ t

2

s _ _

3

gr _ _ n

4

ch _ _ se

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1

We drink to make our bones strong.

a) soda

b) milk

c) sweets

2

..... is rich in calcium.

a) Cheese

b) Nuts

c) Rice

3

Cake is not for your body.

a) bad

b) unhealthy

c) good

4

Pizza has too much fat and

a) vitamins

b) calcium

c) salt

5

..... are small and healthy snacks.

a) Fries

b) Nuts

c) Pizza

6

..... gives us protein.

a) Sugar

b) Fries

c) Meat

7

..... helps our brains grow.

a) Fish

b) Chips

c) Fries

8

..... are salty snacks.

a) Apples

b) Lollipops

c) Chips

3

Read and complete with the words below:

اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(vegetables – energy – healthy)

Ola : Do you like food?

Nour: Yes , I like fruits and

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Many children like to eat snacks after school. Some snacks are unhealthy. Fries and cookies are unhealthy. Fries are cooked in oil. Cookies have too much sugar. Eating these snacks every day is not good for our bodies. It is better to eat fruits and nuts instead. These are healthy snacks. They give us energy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Unhealthy snacks have too much
a) protein b) calcium c) sugar
- 2 Eating unhealthy snacks every day is for our bodies.
a) good b) bad c) healthy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do children like to eat?
- 4 How do healthy snacks help our bodies?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 calcium – in – is – rich – Milk.
.....
- 2 for – you – breakfast – eat – What – do?
.....
- 3 too – Pizza – much – fat – has.
.....
- 4 instead – nuts – I'll – chicken – and – try. 
.....

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

“Healthy and unhealthy foods”
(energy – milk – cake)

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد
في صفحة 59: 📌

exercise (v)	يتدرب	clean (v)	ينظف	sick	مريض
rest (v)	يستريح	medicine	دواء	take care (v)	يعتنى
forget (v)	ينسى	carefully	بحرص (بعناية)	feel better (v)	يتحسن

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

I **exercise** to keep my body healthy.

- أمارس التمارين لأحافظ على صحتي البدنية.

I **clean** my room every day.

- أنظف غرفتي كل يوم.

I **wash** my hands before I eat.

- أغسل يديّ قبل أن أكل.

I **stay** in bed when I am sick.

- أبقى في السرير عندما أكون مريض.

I **rest** to keep my body healthy.

- أستريح لأحافظ على صحتي.

I **take** medicine when I am sick.

- أتناول الدواء عندما أكون مريضًا.

لاحظ أن فعل (v) = verb 📌

B Reading

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Maya learns to Take Care of Herself

Maya likes to play every day, but she often forgets to wash her hands and eat healthy food. One day, she felt sick. Her friend Salma said, "You must take care of yourself. Wash your hands, eat healthy food, rest, and exercise." Maya listened to Salma. She washed herself carefully, ate eggs and fruit, drank water, and rested when she felt tired. She also exercised a little every day. After a few days, Maya felt much better. She said, "I learned that I must take care of myself to stay healthy."



MORAL

Taking care of yourself helps you stay healthy and happy.

الاعتناء بنفسك يساعدك على البقاء بصحة جيدة وسعيداً.

تحب مايا اللعب كل يوم، لكنها كثيرًا ما تنسى غسل يديها وتناول الطعام الصحي. في يوم من الأيام، شعرت بالمرض. قالت لها صديقتها سلمى: "يجب أن تعتني بنفسك. اغسل يديك، تناول طعامًا صحيًا، استريح، ومارس التمارين الرياضية." استمعت مايا إلى سلمى. فغسلت نفسها بعناية، أكلت البيض والفواكه، وشربت الماء، واستراحت عندما شعرت بالتعب. كما مارست التمارين الرياضية قليلًا كل يوم. بعد بضعة أيام، شعرت مايا بتحسن كبير. وقالت: "تعلمت أنه يجب أن أعتني بنفسى لأبقى بصحة جيدة."

Conjugation of Verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

listen يستمع

listen^{ed}

rest

يستريح

rested

exercise يتدرب

exercised

learn

يتعلم

learned

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

feel يشعر

felt

eat

ياكل

ate

drink يشرب

drank

take care

يعتنى بـ

took care



Practice

on Lesson **3**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** We must our hands before we eat.
a) wash b) play c) rest
- 2** Children should every day to be strong.
a) read b) sing c) exercise
- 3** I help my mother the room.
a) write b) clean c) jump
- 4** We should healthy by eating healthy food.
a) dance b) sing c) stay
- 5** It is good to when we feel tired.
a) rest b) run c) shout
- 6** The doctor gives us when we are sick.
a) games b) medicine c) toys
- 7** When we are tired, it is good to in bed.
a) clean b) eat c) stay
- 8** Sarah exercises by
a) myself b) herself c) himself

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة:



erciseex



learn



aswh

3 Read and complete with the words below: ————— اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(healthy – exercise – feel)

Ali : Why do you every day?

Amr: I exercise to keep my body

4 Read the text and answer the questions: ————— اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Yara. I take care of myself. I wash my hands. I eat healthy food. I eat vegetables and fruits. I drink water. I also exercise every day. I must take care of myself to stay healthy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 Yara takes care of

a) myself

b) herself

c) himself

2 She washes her

a) head

b) legs

c) hands

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Yara eat?

4 Why must Yara take care of herself?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: ————— أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

1 to keep – exercise – I – healthy – my body.

2 yourself – of – You – take care – must.

3 to wash – forgets – often – She – her hands.

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

“How you take care of yourself”

(eat – exercise – wash)



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد في صفحة 65:

yogurt	زبادي	honey	عسل
soup	حساء (شورية)	hungry	جائع
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	lunch	وجبة الغداء
meal	وجبة	dinner	وجبة العشاء
snack	وجبة خفيفة	menu	قائمة طعام
stomachache	ألم بالمعدة	advice	نصيحة

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

I eat **yogurt** with honey.

- أنا أكل الزبادي مع العسل.

We drink some **soup** when we're hungry.

- نحن نشرب بعض الحساء (الشورية) عندما نكون جائعين.

I put a little **honey** in my yogurt.

- أنا أضع القليل من العسل في الزبادي الخاص بي.

I eat **breakfast** at 7 a.m.

- أنا أتناول وجبة الإفطار في الساعة السابعة صباحًا.



Lunch is my favorite meal.

- وجبة الغداء هي وجبتي المفضلة.



I eat dinner with my family.

- أنا أتناول العشاء مع أسرتي.



I eat a healthy snack in the afternoon.

- أنا أتناول وجبة خفيفة صحية في فترة بعد الظهر.



I made a healthy menu for today.

- لقد أعددت قائمة طعام صحية لليوم.



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

(eat – menu – meal – breakfast – soup)

- 1 Lunch is my favorite
- 2 We drink some when we're hungry.
- 3 I dinner with my family.
- 4 I eat at 7 a.m. (SB)
- 5 I made a healthy for today. (SB)



Language in Use

Countable and Uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

We can count them (one, two, three,...).

يمكننا عدّها (واحد، اثنان، ثلاثة، ...).

e.g. tomato, carrot, sandwich, potato

- Use **a/an** for one item:

نستخدم a/an قبل الاسم المفرد.

e.g. **a** carrot , **an** apple

- Use **numbers** for more:

نستخدم الأرقام مع الأكثر من واحد:

e.g. **two** eggs, **three** sandwiches

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

We cannot count them individually.

لا يمكننا عدّها بشكل فردي.

e.g. milk, rice, pasta, soup, honey, water

- Use **some** for a part of it:

استخدم some للحديث عن جزء منهم.

e.g. **some** rice, **some** water, **some** honey, **some** soup



Checkpoint

Write **C** for countable and **U** for uncountable next to each

word: **SB** اكتب **C** للاسم المعدود و اكتب **U** للاسم غير المعدود بجوار كل كلمة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.

① tomato

④ honey

② rice

⑤ water

③ sandwich

⑥ cheese

C Reading and Writing

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

Omar's Healthy Menu

Omar loved eating snacks like chips, cake, and soda. He did not eat many fruits or vegetables. One day, he felt tired and had a stomachache.

His teacher told him, "Omar, you need to eat healthy foods like fruits, vegetables, and meat. Omar followed the advice. For breakfast, he ate an apple and drank some milk. For lunch, he had some rice and some salad. For a snack, he had yogurt. He felt strong and happy again.



MORAL

Eating healthy food in the right amounts helps your body stay strong and happy.

تناول الطعام الصحي بالكميات المناسبة يساعد جسمك على البقاء قويًا وسعيدًا.

كان عمر يحب تناول الوجبات الخفيفة مثل الشيبسي، الكيك والصودا. ولم يكن يأكل الكثير من الفواكه أو الخضراوات. في أحد الأيام، شعر بالتعب وأصيب بآلام في المعدة. قالت له معلمته: "يا عمر، عليك أن تأكل أطعمة صحية مثل الفواكه، الخضراوات واللحم." اتبع عمر النصيحة. في وجبة الإفطار، أكل تفاحة وشرب بعض الحليب. وفي الغداء، تناول بعض الأرز مع السلطة. أما في الوجبة الخفيفة، فأكل الزبادي. شعر بالقوة والسعادة مرة أخرى.

Conjugation of Verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

love

يحب

loved

follow

يتبع

followed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

have

يملك

had

tell

يخبر

told

✓ **Checkpoint** Answer the following questions: _____ أجب عن الأسئلة التالية: **SB**

① How did Omar feel when he ate unhealthy food?

② Who gave Omar advice about healthy eating?

D Writing

A Healthy Day Menu

اقرأ ولاحظ: Read and notice:

How to design a "Healthy Day Menu" for breakfast, lunch, and snacks.

كيف تصمم "قائمة طعام صحية" لوجبه الفطار، الغداء والوجبات الخفيفة:

Steps

1. Plan your meals. Choose at least:

خطط لوجباتك. اختر على الأقل:

- 2 healthy items for breakfast
صنفين صحيين للإفطار.
- 2 healthy items for lunch
صنفين صحيين للغداء.
- 1 healthy snack
وجبة خفيفة صحية واحدة.

2. Draw pictures of each food item.

ارسم صورًا لكل صنف من الطعام

3. Label the foods in English.

ضع أسماء الأطعمة باللغة الإنجليزية

4. Write one sentence for each meal. Example:

اكتب جملة واحدة لكل وجبة. مثال:

- "For breakfast, I eat eggs and drink milk."

5. Share your menu with the class. Explain why your menu is healthy.

شارك قائمة طعامك مع الفصل. وشرح لماذا قائمة طعامك صحية.



B Answer the following questions:

③ What do Sara and Ahmed eat every day?

.....

④ What do they do at night?

.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: —

① followed – advice – He – the.

.....

② eat – my – I – with – dinner – family.

.....

③ yogurt – She – with – eats – honey.

.....

④ made – a healthy – I – for today – menu.



.....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: —

① omar loved eating snacks

.....

② lunch is my favorite meal

.....

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📖

“My healthy plan”

(breakfast – snack – yogurt)

.....

.....

.....

Unit 2 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى
تمكين الطالب من
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء
التي وردت في الوحدة.

Lesson (1)

food	طعام	meat	لحم	sugar	سكر
fruits	فاكهة	water	ماء	vegetables	خضراوات

Lesson (2)

milk	لبن	cheese	جبنة	rice	أرز
nuts	مكسرات	eggs	بيض	bread	خبز
chicken	دجاج	fish	سمك	sweets	حلوى
soda	صودا	chips	بطاطس شيبسي	fries	بطاطس محمرة
cookies	بسكويت (الكوكيز)	cake	تورتن (كيك)	pizza	بيتزا
lollipops	مصاصات				

Lesson (3)

exercise	يتدرب	wash	يغسل	clean	ينظف
stay	يبقى	sick	مريض	rest	يستريح
medicine	دواء	take care	يعتنى	forget	ينسى
carefully	بحرص				

Lesson (4)

yogurt	زبادي	honey	عسل	soup	حساء (شوربة)
hungry	جائع	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	lunch	وجبة الغداء
dinner	وجبة العشاء	meal	وجبة	snack	وجبة خفيفة
menu	قائمة طعام	stomachache	ألم بالمعدة	advice	نصيحة

Phonics Focus

ea /i:/

eat يأكل	meat لحمة	beans فول
-------------	--------------	--------------

ee /i:/

see يرى	cheese جبنة	green أخضر	sweet حلو
------------	----------------	---------------	--------------

Language in Use

Reflexive Pronouns:

Pronouns الضمائر	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة	Example
I أنا	myself	I can make a sandwich by myself .
You أنت/أنتما	yourself yourselves	You can wash yourself . Take care of yourselves , girls.
He هو (مفرد مذكر)	himself	He dresses himself .
She هي (مفرد مؤنث)	herself	She looks at herself in the mirror.
It هو/هي لغير العاقل	itself	The cat cleans itself .
We نحن	ourselves	We built the tent ourselves .
They هم	themselves	The kids made salad themselves .

Countable and Uncountable nouns:

Countable nouns

We can count them (one, two, three, ...).

e.g. tomato, carrot, potato, sandwich

Uncountable nouns

We cannot count them individually.

e.g. milk, rice, pasta, soup, honey, water



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.



Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

الكلمة باللغة العربية

الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية

Lesson (1)

food

meat

sugar

فاكهة

ماء

خضراوات

Lesson (2)

milk

eggs

cheese

chicken

soda

lollipops

chips

cookies

beans

salty

أرز

مكسرات

سمك

خبز

بيتزا

حلوي

بطاطس محمرة

تورته (كيك)

لحمة

يأكل

Lesson (3)

exercise

wash

clean

rest

مريض

دواء

قليل

يعتنى

Lesson (4)

yogurt

breakfast

menu

stomachache

soup

وجبة الغداء

وجبة

نصيحة

عسل

وجبة خفيفة

Unit 2 Writing Corner



تتضمن هذه الصفحة
تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:

Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:
اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Tip1:

ابدأ الجملة بحرف كبير "capital letter".

"Eating healthy food"
(milk – egg – strong)

Tip2:

ضع (full stop) period في نهاية الجملة.

I eat healthy food every day. I drink **milk** in the morning. I also eat an **egg** for breakfast. Eating good food makes me **strong** and happy.

Tip3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وتأكد من كتابتك للكلمات بشكل صحيح correct spelling.

Tip4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في كتابة جمل صحيحة.

"My favorite healthy meal"
(rice – water – fruits)

I like to eat **rice** with chicken for lunch. I drink a lot of **water** every day to stay hydrated. I also eat yogurt and **fruits**. Eating healthy food makes me strong and happy.

"Healthy food gives energy"
(calcium – protein – energy)

I eat healthy food every day. Cheese is rich in **calcium**. Eggs and chicken have **protein** to help me grow. Eating good food gives me **energy** to play and study.

Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:
اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Healthy and unhealthy food"
(chips – fruit – energy)

.....

.....

.....



Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة. 📌

1 Circle the odd one out: _____ ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

- 1 milk – eggs – candy – nuts
- 2 pizza – meat – fish – chicken
- 3 soda – cookies – cake – fish
- 4 chips – candy – nuts – soda
- 5 chicken – fish – lollipops – eggs

2 Choose the correct reflexive pronoun: _____ اختر الضمير المنعكس الصحيح:

- 1 I made this cake all by (himself – myself).
- 2 She taught (himself – herself) to play the guitar.
- 3 We enjoyed (themselves – ourselves) at the party.
- 4 You should take care of (yourself – itself).
- 5 The children can dress (themselves – ourselves).

3 Complete the sentences with the correct word: _____ أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمة الصحيحة:

(exercise – wash – clean – sick – rest – medicine)

- 1 I my hands before I eat.
- 2 I every morning to stay strong.
- 3 I stay in bed when I am
- 4 I my room every day.
- 5 I need to when I feel tired.
- 6 I take when I am sick.



Test Yourself

30

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 sw—t

2 gr—n

3 —t

4 ch—se

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

- 1 The children cleaned the classroom by
 a) ourselves b) yourself c) themselves
- 2 I drink milk and eat eggs for
 a) lunch b) breakfast c) snack
- 3 We must our hands before we eat.
 a) wash b) stay c) rest
- 4 Mariam cleaned her room all by
 a) myself b) himself c) herself
- 5 I need honey for the yougurt.
 a) a b) an c) some
- 6 has too much fat and salt.
 a) Pizza b) Milk c) Apples

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

1

(exercise – water – rests)

Amira wakes up early. She eats fruits and yogurt. She drinks water and does ⁽¹⁾ in the garden. At school, she eats lunch and drinks juice. At night, Amira ⁽²⁾ and sleeps early.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

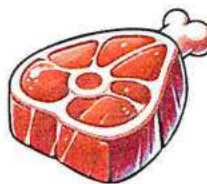
3

1



ousp

2



emat

3



usgar

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

I am Sama. I usually eat eggs and drink a glass of milk. I like healthy food. Fruits, vegetables, milk, bread, rice, chicken, and fish are all healthy. Chips, sweets, pizza, and soda are unhealthy. Healthy food makes us strong and happy, but unhealthy food makes us weak.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Fruits and vegetables are food.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad
- 2 Unhealthy food makes us
a) week b) weak c) happy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Which food does Sama like?
- 4 Why is it important to eat healthy food?

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 brains – grow – Fish – our – helps.
.....
- 2 rice – chicken – We – for dinner – and – eat.
.....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 why is it important to eat healthy food
- 2 pizza is my favorite meal

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7
اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

"A healthy meal"

(menu – healthy – chicken)



A. Language Functions



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Ali drinks (milk – soda – juice) with his breakfast.
- 2 He does (homework – exercise – games) every morning.
- 3 He likes to eat (healthy – bad – unhealthy) food and stay strong.

B. Reading

2 Fill in the missing letters: املأ الحروف الناقصة:

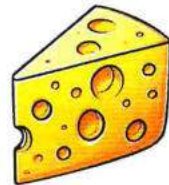
8

1



l_l_l_i_o_p_s

2



ch_e_e

3



y_gu_t

4



sw_ _ts

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 I like to put (honey – dinner – snack) on yogurt.
- 2 Farida drinks hot (chips – salad – soup) in winter.
- 3 She cleaned the room by (her – himself – herself).
- 4 We need (a – an – some) water.

D. Writing

4 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

① washing your hands keeps you healthy

② cookies are not healthy snacks

5 Reorder the words to form correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

① gives – us – Meat – protein.

② rich in – and – calcium – cheese – Milk – are.

③ gives – energy – us – Food – to play.

④ strong – makes – bodies – our – What?

6 Write three sentences using the following guiding elements:

6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“Be healthy every day”

(exercise – medicine – healthy)

Al-Adwaa Revision-February

المراجعة الشهرية الخاصة بمقرر شهر فبراير.



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- A ① _ _ ip ② _ _ op ③ ch _ _ se ④ b _ _ ns
- B ① s _ _ ② m _ _ t ③ _ _ ep ④ _ _ ass

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A ① You listen to your teachers.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't
- ② Milk is good for our
a) fats b) bones c) proteins
- ③ There is water in the glass.
a) an b) some c) a
- ④ The ambulance takes sick people to the
a) school b) park c) hospital
- ⑤ Be careful! You might hurt
a) yourself b) himself c) themselves
- ⑥ People should drink a lot of every day to stay hydrated.
a) water b) soda c) juice
- B ① The cat is cleaning
a) yourself b) myself c) itself
- ② An apple is a good at school.
a) snack b) salt c) medicine
- ③ You must wear a when you ride a bike.
a) sign b) seat belt c) helmet
- ④ We call the when someone is very sick or hurt.
a) ambulance b) rules c) street
- ⑤ Pizza and are unhealthy food.
a) milk b) fries c) nuts
- ⑥ We must look both ways before we the street.
a) cross b) cook c) protect

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

A (healthy – milk – energy)

I wake up early. I always eat breakfast in the morning before I go to school. A good meal makes me strong and ⁽¹⁾..... I usually have eggs, some bread, and a glass of milk. This gives me ⁽²⁾..... for the day.

B (seat belt – safe – street)

When you cross the street, you must be careful. Always look left and right before you walk on the ⁽¹⁾..... To stay ⁽²⁾....., you must follow the rules. When you drive a car, you must wear the seat belt.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

A ① be – must – polite – You.

② mustn't – a knife – with – play – You.

B ① Don't – the – hot stove – touch.

② mustn't – You – talk – to – strangers.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① i had eggs and milk for breakfast

② do you want bread or rice

B ① you should not drink soda

② What game does hala play

Al-Adwaa Tests-February

1

Listening



 **Listen and write the missing letter(s):** _____ : استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- ① gr _ _ n ② _ _ t ③ _ _ one ④ _ _ ide

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① You do your homework every day.
a) can't b) mustn't c) must
- ② Can I have juice, please?
a) a b) an c) some
- ③ Always follow the to stay safe.
a) rules b) knives c) dangers
- ④ We call the police in a/an
a) game b) emergency c) street
- ⑤ First aid helps people.
a) happy b) excited c) injured
- ⑥ Knives are sharp and can you.
a) save b) hurt c) protect
- ⑦ is rich in carbohydrates.
a) Milk b) Bread c) Fish
- ⑧ When you are sick, you should take
a) medicine b) fries c) soda

Writing

3 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: ————— انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

- 1



nsack

- 2



encyg**e**mer

- 3



eabns

Model

2

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: _____

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 _ _ ab

2 _ _ uck

3 sw _ _ t

4 m _ _ t

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: _____

1 In the classroom, you _____ be polite to your friends.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) never

2 Too many _____ are bad for your health.

a) vegetables

b) fries

c) exercise

3 We usually eat rice and chicken for _____.

a) lunch

b) breakfast

c) snack

4 The boy is talking to _____ in the mirror.

a) himself

b) myself

c) herself

5 Always be _____ when you walk near the street.

a) scared

b) careful

c) hurt

6 The little girl _____ her head to say "yes".

a) crossed

b) ran

c) nodded

7 A _____ is someone you don't know.

a) friend

b) stranger

c) teacher

8 It's _____ to run across the street without looking.

a) dangerous

b) safe

c) careful

Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: _____

1 must - You - your homework - do. _____

2 The cat - itself - cleaning - is. _____

3 you - like - Do - pizza - eating? _____

4 our - respect - parents - must - We. _____

5 mustn't - candy - You - too much - eat. _____

1



Listen and choose the correct answer: —————: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- ① When we walk near the street, we must be very (lazy – careful – right).
- ② It can be (safe – early – dangerous) if we run or play close to cars.
- ③ We should always look right and left before we (cross – run – catch) the street.

2

Fill in the missing letters: —————: املاً الحروف الناقصة:

1



o _ey

2



fi_st ai_

3



m_ _l

4



ea _s

3

Choose the correct answer: —————: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① Lunch is my favorite (meal – game – color).
- ② We see (chairs – signs – shoes) on the street to help us.
- ③ Did you do the homework by (myself – herself – yourself)?
- ④ You (must – mustn't – can) be kind to your friends.

4

Write three sentences using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“How you take care of yourself”

(healthy – exercise – my hands)

.....

.....

.....

.....



Module 2

Unit 3 Heroes Around Us

Unit 4 Living with Technology

Unit 3

Heroes Around Us

أبطال من حولنا



Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- identify the gist of a short listening text about heroes.
- listen to a list and pick out the helpful actions.
- recognize the silent "e" in a short listening text correctly.

- يحدد الفكرة العامة لنص استماع قصير عن الأبطال.
- يستمع إلى قائمة ويختار الأفعال المفيدة.
- يتعرف بشكل صحيح على حرف "e" الصامت في نص استماع قصير.

Speaking

- use target vocabulary to talk about heroes in our life.
- use adverbs of sequence to describe a hero's actions in order.
- give a short presentation about a chosen hero.

- يستخدم المفردات المستهدفة للحديث عن الأبطال في حياتنا.
- يستخدم ظروف التسلسل لوصف تصرفات البطل بالترتيب.
- يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا قصيرًا عن بطل مختار.

Reading

- recognize target vocabulary about heroes in short texts.
- answer comprehension questions about Egyptian and everyday heroes based on a short reading text.
- recognize the correct order of story events.

- يتعرف على المفردات المستهدفة المتعلقة بالأبطال في نصوص قصيرة.
- يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالأبطال المصريين والأبطال في الحياة اليومية بناءً على نص قصير.
- يتعرف على الترتيب الصحيح لأحداث القصة.

Writing

- use vocabulary to describe a hero's actions.
- use first,... then... to describe a sequence of events.

- يستخدم مفردات لوصف ما يقوم به بطل ما.
- يستخدم "أولاً، ... ثم ..." لوصف تسلسل الأحداث.

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

hero
بطلbrave
شجاعstrong
قويkind
طيب / عطوفsmart
ذكي

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي توجد في الصفحات 86/87/89.

special	خاص / مميز	courage	شجاعة	hard times	أوقات صعبة
difficult	صعب	swimmer	سباح	safely	بأمان
trouble	مشكلة	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	fire truck	سيارة الإطفاء
uniform	زي موحد	fire alarm	جهاز إنذار الحريق	building	مبنى
ladder	سلم	honor	شرف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
encourage يشجع	encouraged	solve يحل	solved
fill يملأ	filled	spray يرش	sprayed
save ينقذ	saved	smile يتسم	smiled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
put on يرتدي	put on	ring يرن	rang
drive يقود	drove		

Definitions

a hero	someone who does something special, good, or brave	شخص ما يفعل شيئاً مميزاً أو جيداً أو شجاعاً.
brave	shows courage in hard times	يظهر الشجاعة في الأوقات الصعبة.
strong	can do difficult things easily	يمكن أن تفعل الأشياء الصعبة بسهولة.
kind	being nice and caring about others	أن تكون لطيفاً وتهتم بالآخرين.
smart	solves problems well	يحل المشاكل بشكل جيد.



Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Karim: Look at that swimmer! He is so strong.

انظر إلى ذلك السباح! إنه قوى جدًا.

Omar: Yes, he makes swimming look easy, even when it's difficult.

نعم، فهو يجعل السباحة تبدو سهلة، حتى عندما تكون صعبة.



Karim: Do you think he is a hero?

هل تعتقد أنه بطل؟

Omar: Yes, I do. Last week he helped a girl who couldn't swim in the pool.

نعم، أعتقد ذلك. في الأسبوع الماضي ساعد فتاة لا تستطيع السباحة في حمام السباحة.



Karim: That is very brave.

هذا شجاع جدًا.

Omar: He is! He teaches children how to swim safely and uses kind words to encourage them.

بالفعل! هو يعلم الأطفال كيف يسبحون بأمان، ويستخدم كلمات لطيفة لتشجيعهم.



Karim: Yes, being kind means you show care to others.

نعم، أن تكون طيباً يعني أنك تُظهر اهتمامك بالآخرين.

Omar: He is smart as well.

وهو ذكي أيضاً.





Karim: Why smart?

لماذا ذكي؟

Omar: Because he solves problems well. If someone is in trouble, he knows what to do.

لأنه يحلّ المشاكل جيّداً. إذا كان هناك شخص ما في ورطة، فهو يعرف ماذا يفعل.



Karim: Wow, strong, brave, kind, and smart.

واو، قوي، شجاع، طيب، وذكي.

Omar: Yes, that's why everyone calls him a true hero!

نعم، لهذا السبب يسميه الجميع بطلاً حقيقياً!



Checkpoint

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

① is – brave – very – That.

.....

② strong – is – He – so.

.....

③ looks – easy – He – swimming – makes.

.....

④ you – think – Do – a hero – he – is?

.....

B Language in Use

Adverbs of Sequence ظروف التسلسل

Use “**first**” and “**then**” to show order.

- استخدم “أولاً” و”ثم” لإظهار الترتيب.

• **First** - What happens at the beginning.

- نستخدم (first) لإظهار ما يحدث في البداية.

• **Then** - What happens next.

- نستخدم (then) لبيان ما يحدث بعد ذلك.

First

Then

e.g. **First**, Omar trained hard. **Then**, he climbed mountains.

- أولاً، تدرّب عمر بجد. ثم تسلق الجبال.

 **Checkpoint** Reorder the sentences: **SB** _____ أعد ترتيب الجمل:

 يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

① saw the fire / he / first → First,

called for help / he / then → Then,

② helped the old man / she / First →

gave him water / she / Then →

③ noticed the problem / the teacher / First →

he / told the principal / Then →

④ put on the uniform / the student / First →

went to school / he / Then →

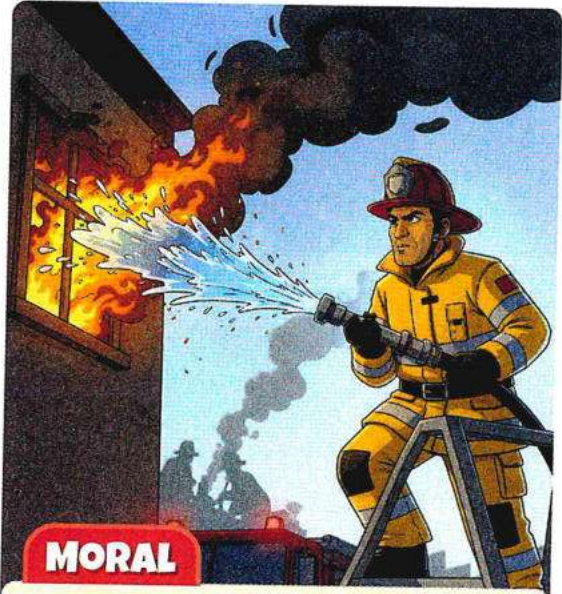
C Reading

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Brave Firefighter

Khaled is a brave firefighter. Every morning, he puts on his helmet and uniform. One afternoon, the fire alarm rang loudly. Khaled jumped into the fire truck and drove quickly through the streets. There was a fire in a building and smoke filled the sky. When he arrived, the fire was big, but Khaled stayed calm. First, he climbed the ladder. Then, he sprayed water, and saved a little boy from the smoke. The family of the boy felt happy, and said "Thank you!" Khaled smiled proudly. "I like to help others."



MORAL

Helping others is the greatest honor.

مساعدة الآخرين هي أعظم شرف.

خالد هو رجل إطفاء شجاع. كل صباح، يرتدي خوذته وملابسه الرسمية. في ظهيرة يوم ما، رن جرس الإنذار بالحريق بصوت عالٍ. قفز خالد في سيارة الإطفاء وقاد بسرعة عبر الشوارع. كان هناك حريق في مبنى، والدخان ملأ السماء. عندما وصل، كان الحريق كبيراً، لكن خالد بقي هادئاً. أولاً، صعد السلم. ثم، رش الماء، وأنقذ صبياً صغيراً من الدخان. شعرت عائلة الصبي بالسعادة وقالت: "شكراً لك!" ابتسم خالد بفخر وقال: "أحب مساعدة الآخرين."

✓ Checkpoint Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية: SB

① What is Khaled's job?

a) a doctor

b) a firefighter

c) a teacher

② What does Khaled put on before going to a fire?

a) a helmet and uniform

b) shoes

c) a hat and coat

③ Khaled drives a fire truck to help people. (True / False)

④ Khaled works hard to keep people safe. (True / False)

Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى
تتمكن من تسميعها في
نهاية الوحدة
في صفحة 111.

▶ Look and write: _____ انظر واكتب:



hero



brave



strong



kind



smart



Practice

on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The boy was a when he saved the little cat.
a) farmer b) player c) hero
- 2 The child went into the dark room to find his toy.
a) funny b) brave c) kind
- 3 You must be to climb that tall mountain.
a) strong b) small c) young
- 4 The girl is because she solves problems.
a) slow b) smart c) small
- 5 The ran into the burning house to save the family.
a) firefighter b) teacher c) student
- 6 The firefighter saved the child from the smoke.
a) brave b) scared c) sad
- 7 A firefighter on his helmet and uniform every morning.
a) cuts b) puts c) cooks
- 8 First, the alarm rang., the firefighter came.
a) But b) Or c) Then

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(First – brave – Then)

Yesterday, there was a fire in our street. A hero ran into the house to help. He was very ⁽¹⁾ and carried two small children by himself. ⁽²⁾ he saved the children. Then he called the firefighter.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

One morning, a cat was on a tall tree and couldn't come down. Omar saw it and was very brave. He climbed up the tree, and he was strong enough to hold the cat safely. He called his sister, who was smart and quickly brought a box to carry the cat in. Omar gave the cat to an old lady, and he was very kind to her. Everyone in the street said Omar was a real hero.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- ① Omar was very when he climbed the tree.
a) afraid b) brave c) lazy
- ② His sister was because she quickly brought a box.
a) smart b) weak c) slow

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ Where was the cat?
- ④ Why did people call Omar a hero?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- ① The brave – climbed – the mountain – girl.
- ② is – firefighter – Hazem – a brave.
- ③ the building – in – There – a fire – was.
- ④ climbed – he – the – First, – ladder. 

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

– eman is a very smart girl

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

 مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

"A hero"

(firefighter – helmet – brave)

.....

.....

.....

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: _____

استمع، أشر وقل:



helpful

متعاون / مفيد



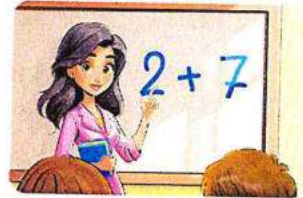
rescue

ينقذ



uniform

زى موحد/رسمي



teach

يُدَرِّس / يُعَلِّم

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد في صفحته 94.

job	وظيفة	feel better (v)	يتحسن	check (v)	يفحص
patients	المرضى	rescue lives (v)	ينقذ أرواحاً	make sure (v)	يتأكد من
best care	أفضل رعاية	amazing	مذهل	important	مهم

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

The boy is **helpful**.

الولد متعاون.

Firefighters **rescue** people.

رجال الإطفاء ينقذون الناس.

The police officers wear a **uniform**.

يَرتدى ضباط الشرطة زيّاً موحدًا.

My mom **teaches** math.

أمي تُدَرِّس الرياضيات.



Checkpoint

Read and complete: _____

اقرأ وأكمل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

(teaches – uniform – rescue)

- 1 Firefighters people.
- 2 The police officers wear a
- 3 My father works at school. He math.



Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Doctor: Hello there! I'm Doctor Ali. My job is to help people feel better.
مرحباً بكم! أنا الدكتور على. وظيفتي هي مساعدة الناس على الشعور بالتحسن.

Student: Wow! How do you do that?

رائع! كيف تفعل ذلك؟



Doctor: I wear a special uniform, which shows I'm a doctor. I check patients and give them the help they need.
أرتدي زيّاً خاصاً، مما يدل على أنني طبيب. أقوم بفحص المرضى وأقدم لهم المساعدة التي يحتاجون إليها.

Student: Do you really rescue lives?

هل تُنقذ الأرواح حقاً؟



Doctor: Yes! I help people who are very sick or hurt.
نعم! أساعد الأشخاص المرضى جداً أو المصابين.

Student: Do you work with others?

هل تعمل مع آخرين؟



Doctor: Sometimes, I work with a team to make sure patients get the best care. We all have different jobs.
أحياناً أعمل مع فريق للتأكد من حصول المرضى على أفضل رعاية. لدينا جميعاً وظائف مختلفة.

Student: That's amazing! You're very helpful!

هذا مذهل! أنت متعاون جداً!



Doctor: Thank you! Helping others and keeping them healthy is very important.
شكراً لك! مساعدة الآخرين والحفاظ على صحتهم أمر مهم للغاية.

B Phonics Focus

Magic "e"



Listen and repeat: _____

استمع وردد:

Some words have a magic "e" at the end. It doesn't make a sound, but it makes the vowel before it say its name.

بعض الكلمات لها حرف "e" السحري في النهاية. لا يصدر صوتًا، لكنه يجعل الحرف المتحرك قبله يُنطق بأسمه.

Examples

mad	→	made
kit	→	kite
hop	→	hope

Extra words

make	يصنع	kite	طائرة ورقية	hope	أمل / يأمل
name	اسم	brave	شجاع	vase	زهريّة
sale	تخفيض				



Note

• لاحظ أن عندما تأتي magic "e" في نهاية الكلمة لا تنطق، ولكنها تجعل الحرف المتحرك قبلها يُنطق بصوته الطويل.

e.g. hop → hope



Checkpoint

Unscramble the following letters to form words:

• أعد ترتيب الحروف الآتية لتكون كلمات:

① a e l s

② m a n e

③ e a k m

④ t i k e

⑤ e v a r b

⑥ e v s a

C Reading



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Vocabulary

policewoman	شرطية	sunny morning	يوم مشمس
way	طريق	little	صغير السن
child	طفل	right away	على الفور
afraid	خائف	work hard (v)	يعمل بجد
grateful	ممتن	parents	آباء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stop يتوقف	stopped	search يبحث	searched
protect يحمي	protected		

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
speak يتحدث	spoke	lose يضيع / يتوه	lost
hold يمسك	held	find يجد	found
can يستطيع	could	(be) is فعل يكون	was



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

(searched – policeman – child)

- 1 A protects people and keeps the city safe.
- 2 The was afraid because he lost his parents.
- 3 I for my lost pen at school.

Officer Asmaa – The Helpful Policewoman

Officer Asmaa is a policewoman in Cairo. One sunny morning, she was walking on her way to work when she saw a little child crying in the street. **First**, she stopped right away and spoke to him kindly, asking what was wrong. The child was lost and could not find his parents. Officer Asmaa held his hand, and told him not to be afraid. **Then**, she carefully searched the street until she found his parents. They were very happy. Officer Asmaa is a brave policewoman who protects people and works hard to keep the city safe. We are grateful for her and all police officers who keep us safe every day.



MORAL

We should always be kind and help others in need.

ينبغي علينا دائماً أن نكون لطفاء ونساعد الآخرين المحتاجين.

الضابطة أسماء هي شرطية في القاهرة. في صباح أحد الأيام المشمسة، كانت تسير في طريقها إلى العمل عندما رأت طفلاً صغيراً يبكي في الشارع. أولاً، توقفت على الفور وتحدثت معه بلطف، وسألته ما الأمر. كان الطفل تائهاً ولا يستطيع العثور على والديه. أمسكت الضابطة أسماء بيده، وطمأنته قائلة: "لا تخف". ثم بدأت تبحث بعناية في الشارع حتى وجدت والديه. كانوا سعداء جداً. الضابطة أسماء شرطية شجاعة تحمي الناس وتعمل بجد للحفاظ على أمان المدينة. نحن ممتنون لها ولكل ضباط الشرطة الذين يحافظون على سلامتنا كل يوم.



Checkpoint Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

(parents – lost – policewoman – safe)

- 1 Officer Asmaa is a brave in Cairo.
- 2 She found a little child who was in the street.
- 3 The child could not find his
- 4 Police officers work hard to keep the city



Practice

on Lesson 2

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____: استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

1 n _ m _

2 br _ v _

3 k _ t _

4 h _ p _

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My teacher is always when I ask him questions.

a) lazy

b) helpful

c) funny

2 A doctor's is to help sick people. (SB)

a) job

b) toy

c) game

3 Students must wear a at school.

a) helmet

b) hat

c) uniform

4 A firefighter people from fire. (SB)

a) wears

b) rescues

c) cooks

5 The child was and could not find his parents.

a) lost

b) happy

c) excited

6 The doctor's job is to help people feel

a) bad

b) shy

c) better

3 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(rescue – firefighters – uniform)

Noha : What do do?

Salma: They people.



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك علي فهم النصوص التي توجد في الصفحات 101/102.

support (v)	يدعم	inspire (v)	يُلهم / يُحفّز	leader	قائد
courage	شجاعة	honest	صادق/أمين	village	قرية
flood	فيضان				

Extra Vocabulary

talent show	عرض المواهب	lie (v)	يكذب	safe place	مكان آمن
poor	فقير	hospital	مستشفى	people in need	المحتاجين
sick people	المرضى				

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

My friend **supports** me when I'm sad.

صديقي يدعمني عندما أكون حزينًا.

Mo Salah **inspires** me to play football.

محمد صلاح يُلهمني لألعب كرة القدم.

A good **leader** helps his team.

القائد الجيد يساعد فريقه.

He shows **courage** in the talent show.

هو يُظهر الشجاعة في عرض المواهب.

Mourad is **honest** and never lies.

مراد صادق ولا يكذب أبدًا.

Definitions

support	to help someone	يُساعد أو يدعم شخصًا ما
inspire	to make someone want to do something good	يجعل شخصًا ما يرغب في فعل شيء جيد
leader	a person who shows others what to do	شخص يُرشد الآخرين لما يجب فعله
courage	being brave when something is hard or scary	أن تكون شجاعًا عندما يكون الأمر صعبًا أو مخيفًا
honest	always telling the truth	يقول الحقيقة دائمًا



Listen and read: _____

استمع واقرأ:



Lina: I read a story about a girl who helped her village during a flood.

قرأت قصة عن فتاة ساعدت قريتها أثناء الفيضانات.

Hala: Really? What did she do?

حقاً؟ ماذا فعلت؟



Lina: First, she told the people about the flood. Then, she helped them move to a safe place.

أولاً، أخبرت الناس عن الفيضان. ثم ساعدتهم على الانتقال إلى مكان آمن.

Hala: That's amazing. She was a great leader and showed courage.

هذا رائع. لقد كانت قائدة عظيمة وأظهرت شجاعة.



Lina: Yes! She inspired everyone and gave support to those who needed it.

نعم! لقد ألهمت الجميع وقدمت الدعم لمن كان بحاجة إليه.

Hala: I want to be like her someday.

أريد أن أكون مثلها يوماً ما.



Checkpoint Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

① inspired – She – everyone.

.....

② did – she – What – do?

.....

③ was – leader – She – a great.

.....

B Reading

انظر واقرأ:

Look and read:

A Helping Hero

Heba helped many people during hard times in Egypt. She always cared about others and wanted to make their lives better. First, she gave food and clothes to poor families so they could live happily. Then, she helped build hospitals to support sick people in need. Heba is also very honest and brave. She is not afraid to do what is right. Many Egyptians look up to her because she shows them how to be kind and strong. Her good heart and courage inspire everyone.



MORAL

Helping others can change lives and inspire kindness.

مساعدة الآخرين يمكن أن تغيّر الحياة وتلهم الناس لفعل الخير.

ساعدت هبة الكثير من الناس خلال الأوقات الصعبة في مصر. لقد اهتمت دائماً بالآخرين وأرادت أن تجعل حياتهم أفضل. أولاً، قدمت الطعام والملابس للأسر الفقيرة حتى يتمكنوا من العيش بسعادة. ثم ساعدت في بناء المستشفيات لدعم المرضى المحتاجين. هبة أيضاً صديقة وشجاعة جداً، إنها لا تخشى أن تفعل ما هو صحيح. العديد من المصريين ينظرون إليها بإعجاب لأنها تُظهر لهم كيف يكون الإنسان طيباً وقوياً. قلبها الطيب وشجاعتها يُلهمان الجميع.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

help

يساعد

helped

want

يريد

wanted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

give

يعطى

gave

build

يبني

built



Checkpoint

Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع (✓) أو (X):

① Heba gave food and clothes to poor families.

()

② Heba helped to build hospitals for sick people.

()

③ Heba's kindness and courage inspire others.

()



Practice

on Lesson

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My friends always me when I feel sad.

a) climb

b) support

c) swim

2 Good teachers always their students to try new things.

a) inspire

b) hate

c) sleep

3 The firefighter showed great during the big fire.

a) kite

b) courage

c) meal

4 We trust Omar because he is always and tells the truth.

a) leader

b) honest

c) kind

5 A good leader helps his/her

a) team

b) color

c) movie

6 Amr helps build to support sick people.

a) schools

b) beaches

c) hospitals

7 Good people always give food and clothes to families.



a) poor

b) rich

c) bad

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(leader - honest - inspire)

Ahmed is a good boy who always supports his friends when they need help. He always tries to ⁽¹⁾ others to do their best. He is very honest and everyone respects him as a ⁽²⁾ in the class.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a helpful boy. He supports his friends at school. His teacher inspires him to try new things. Omar is honest and always tells the truth. He shows courage when he helps others. Omar's classmates think he is a good leader.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Omar always his friends.
a) ignores b) supports c) hides
- 2 His teacher him to try new things.
a) scares b) inspires c) teaches

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When does Omar show courage?
- 4 Why do his classmates think he is a good leader?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 be – to – Always – everyone – honest.
- 2 friends – your – support – You – should.
- 3 books – inspire – can – Reading – me.
- 4 leader – helps – the team – A good.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- the children are playing in the garden

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

"Being a good friend"

(inspire – honest – support)

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد في صفحته 106.

athlete

شخص رياضي

event

حدث

medal

ميدالية

famous

مشهور

Extra Vocabulary

race

سباق

gold

ذهب / ذهبي

sports

الرياضة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

respect

يحترم

practice

يمارس

clap

يصفق

Past

respected

practiced

clapped

Present

train

يتدرب

celebrate

يحتفل

smile

يبتسم

Past

trained

celebrated

smiled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

run

يجري

get ready

يستعد

Past

ran

got ready

Present

win

يفوز

give up

يستسلم

Past

won

gave up

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

An **athlete** runs fast in the race.

يجري الرياضي بسرعة في السباق.

We should **respect** our parents.

يجب أن نحترم والدينا.

The school **event** is on Thursday.

الحدث المدرسي يوم الخميس.

The boy won a gold **medal** in sports.

فاز الولد بميدالية ذهبية في الرياضة.

Look and read:

The Gold Medal

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She worked hard every day to get ready for a big event. She trained, practiced, and never gave up. At last, she won a gold medal for Egypt. Her team made a party to celebrate her. Everyone clapped and smiled for her. Feryal said, "This medal is for everyone who helped me".



Hard work brings success.

العمل الجاد يجلب النجاح.

فريال أشرف هي رياضية مصرية مشهورة. كانت تعمل بجد كل يوم لتستعد لحدث كبير. تدرّبت ومارست الرياضة ولم تستسلم أبداً. وأخيراً، فازت بميدالية ذهبية لمصر. أقام فريقها حفلة للاحتفال بها. صَفَّق الجميع وابتسموا لها. قالت فريال: "هذه الميدالية لكل من ساعدني."



Checkpoint

1. Choose the correct answer اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I won a (book – medal – bottle) in the race.
- ② We should (hate – run – respect) our teachers and classmates.
- ③ The school (event – table – van) will start at 11 a.m.

2. Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة التالية: (SB)

① Who is Feryal Ashraf?

.....

② What did she do every day to get ready?

.....

③ How did the team celebrate her?

.....

B Writing

➤ A presentation about celebrating an Egyptian hero:

عرض تقديمي حول الاحتفال بالبطل المصري:

① Choose a hero.

اختر بطلاً.

② Draw a picture of the hero.

ارسم صورة للبطل.

③ Write 3–4 short sentences about the hero using the unit's vocabulary.

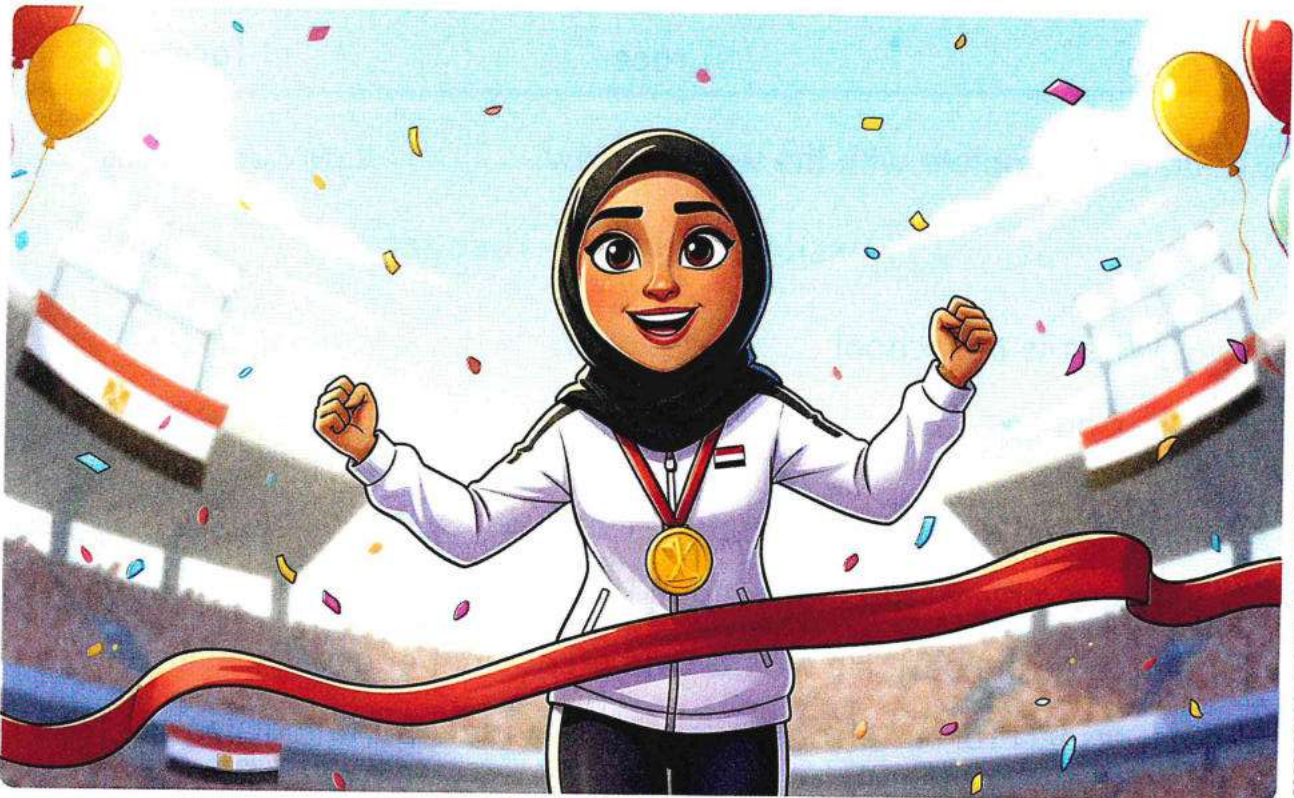
اكتب ٣-٤ جمل قصيرة عن البطل باستخدام مفردات الوحدة.

④ Use **First...** **Then ...** to show what the hero did.

استخدم أولاً...، ثم... لإظهار ما فعله البطل.

e.g.

Feryal Ashraf is an athlete. **First**, she worked hard and trained every day. **Then**, she won a gold medal for Egypt. Her team made a party to celebrate her. She is a hero to many people. Everyone showed her respect.





Practice

on Lesson

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

① We took many photos during the special

a) event

b) toy

c) bag

② Mohamed Salah is a very Egyptian football player.

a) quiet

b) shy

c) famous

③ The ran very fast and won the race.

a) teacher

b) athlete

c) driver

④ Children must the rules at school.

a) respect

b) jump

c) hide

5 He was proud to wear the gold around his neck.

a) toy

b) bag

c) medal

⑥ Children like to play many different after school.

a) books

b) athletes

c) sports

⑦ Athletes run fast in the

a) cake

b) race

c) face

2 اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: _____

(Thursday – event – respect)

Nader : When is the school

Amr : It is on

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali is a young athlete who plays many kinds of sports. He trained hard every day to be the best. He won a gold medal in the race. People showed him great respect for his effort. Ali's school made a party to celebrate him, and he became very famous.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Ali is a young
a) athlete b) teacher c) chef
- 2 He won a gold in the race.
a) uniform b) medal c) toy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do people show him respect?
- 4 Who made a party for Ali?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 help – must – friends – your – You.
.....

- 2 is – event – When – the school?
.....

- 3 respect – should – everyone – We.
.....

- 4 trained – every – The athlete – day – hard. **Super Question ?**
.....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:
- everyone clapped and smiled for amira.

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📖

"An Egyptian athlete"

(famous – medal – trained)

.....

.....

.....

Unit 3 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى
تمكين الطالب من
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء
التي وردت في الوحدة.

Lesson (1)

hero	بطل brave	strong شجاع	قوى
kind	عطوف smart	firefighter ذكي	رجل إطفاء

Lesson (2)

helpful	متعاون/مفيد rescue	uniform ينقذ	زى مُوحد
teach	يدرس/ يُعلِّم way	right away طريق	على الفور
lost	تائه afraid	grateful خائف	ممتن

Lesson (3)

support	يدعم inspire	leader يُلهِم / يُحفِّز	قائد
courage	شجاعة lie	honest يكذب	أمين
flood	فيضان village	hospital قرية	مستشفى

Lesson (4)

athlete	شخص رياضي event	medal حدث	ميدالية
respect	يحترم famous	مشهور	

Phonics Focus

Magic "e"

make يصنع

brave شجاع

name اسم

kite طائرة ورقية

hope أمل / يأمل

vase زهرية

sale تخفيض

Language in Use

Adverbs of Sequence ظروف التسلسل

Use "First" and "Then" to show order:

استخدم "أولاً" و"ثم" لإظهار الترتيب:

First – What happens at the beginning.

Then – What happens next.

e.g. First, Omar trained hard.

e.g. Then, he climbed mountains.



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

Read and write: اقرأ واكتب:

الكلمة باللغة العربية

الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية

Lesson (1)

hero

.....

.....

سيارة إطفاء

brave

.....

.....

مشكلة

strong

.....

.....

رجل إطفاء

kind

.....

.....

دخان

smart

.....

.....

سلم

Lesson (2)

helpful

.....

.....

يرتدى

rescue

.....

.....

يدرّس / يُعلّم

job

.....

.....

خائف

uniform

.....

.....

المرضى

hope

.....

.....

زهريّة

Lesson (3)

leader

.....

.....

يدعم

courage

.....

.....

أمين / صادق

lie

.....

.....

فيضان

hospital

.....

.....

قرية

inspire

.....

.....

موهبة

Lesson (4)

race

.....

.....

حدث

respect

.....

.....

ميدالية

famous

.....

.....

شخص رياضي

Unit 3 Writing Corner



تتضمن هذه الصفحة
تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Tip 1:

ابدأ الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص وأيام
الأسبوع بحرف كبير. "Capital letter"

"A brave police officer"

(police officer – protect – brave)

Tip 2:

ضع period (full stop)
في نهاية الجملة.

A police officer is a person who keeps us safe. Police officers protect people and keep the city safe. They are brave and work hard every day.

Tip 3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وتأكد من كتابتك
للكلمات بشكل صحيح correct spelling.

Tip 4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في كتابة جمل
صحيحة.

"Being a good friend"

(respect – helpful – smart)

A good friend shows respect to others. A good friend is helpful and kind. A good friend is smart and makes good choices. Friends care for each other every day.

"Strong athletes"

(work hard – sports – practice)

Strong athletes work hard every day. Athletes run and play sports. They practice every day.

Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Our brave firefighters"

(helmet – strong – heroes)

.....

.....

.....



Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

1 Choose the correct word: _____ اختر الكلمة الصحيحة:

- 1 A doctor's (rescue/ job) is to help sick people.
- 2 The pilot wears a (uniform/ helmet) when flying a plane.
- 3 The firefighter (rescues/ wears) a girl from the fire.
- 4 My sister is (helpful/ brave) because she helps her friends.

2 Reorder the words to form a sentence: _____ أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملة:

- 1 medal / gold / won / a / Ahmed.

- 2 athlete / trains / The / every day.

- 3 respect / our / parents / We / should.

- 4 Monday / is / event / The / on.

3 Fill in the blanks using words from the box:

املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات الموجودة في المربع:

(rescue – uniform – teaches – helpful)

- 1 The firefighter will the people from the fire.

- 2 The nurse is very

- 3 The police officer wears a

- 4 My dad science.



Test yourself

30

Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

s_l_

2

v_se_

3

m_k_

4

n_m_

Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

1

Malek is and never lies.

a) honest

b) support

c) bad

2

First, I wash my hands, I eat my food.

a) the

b) then

c) than

3

My friends always me when I feel sad.

a) climb

b) support

c) swim

4

I wear a school every day.

a) book

b) pencil

c) uniform

5

The firefighter the cat from the tree.

a) rescues

b) sleeps

c) closes

6

First, we cleaned the room., we decorated it with balloons.

a) Then

b) but

c) than

3

Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(hero – safe – protects)

A police officer is a hero. He is really brave. He wears a uniform. He helps people and ⁽¹⁾ them from danger. Police officers keep us ⁽²⁾ every day.

4

Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3

1



eacht

2



msart

3



tsrong

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

5

Heroes are not only in stories. We see heroes around us every day. Police officers, firefighters, and doctors are heroes because they help people. Teachers and parents are also heroes because they care for us. A hero is anyone who is kind, brave, and helpful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Heroes are not only in
a) foods b) stories c) houses
- 2 We see heroes around us every
a) day b) week c) year

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do teachers and parents do for us?
- 4 Who is a hero?

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

1

- 1 you – rescue – lives – Do?

- 2 very – is – Helping – important – others.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 the firefighter is a real hero

- 2 what did she win for egypt?

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب

"Doctors"

(patients – uniform – help)



A. Language Functions

1



استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Hussein is a (hero – doctor – teacher).
- 2 He is (scared – lazy – brave) and kind.
- 3 He helps people in (games – trouble – school).

B. Reading

2

املأ الحروف الناقصة: Fill in the missing letters:

8

1



m_d_l

2



poli_em_n

3



le_d_r

4



h_r_

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: Choose the correct answer:

8

- 1 Police officers wear a (skirt – dress – uniform).
- 2 (Last – Than – First), I brush my teeth, then I go to bed.
- 3 A hero can (sleep – rescue – eat) people in danger.
- 4 First, I put on my shoes, (then – than – thin) I go outside.

D. Writing

4 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 the firefighter is a real hero

2 when is the school event

5 Reorder the words to form correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

1 Parents – always – children – their – protect.

2 be – to – Always – everyone – kind.

3 books – inspire – can – Reading – me.

4 a – great – was – Nour – leader.

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

6

“Being a good friend”

(support – honest – inspire)

Unit 4

Living With Technology

الحياة مع التكنولوجيا

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- recognize key words and phrases about technology in short spoken texts. - يتعرف على الكلمات والعبارات الرئيسية حول التكنولوجيا في النصوص المنطوقة القصيرة.
- carry out simple instructions related to technology use and online safety. - ينفذ تعليمات بسيطة تتعلق باستخدام التكنولوجيا والسلامة عبر الإنترنت.
- Recognize R-controlled vowels (ar, er, or) in spoken words. - يتعرف على الحروف المتحركة التي يتحكم بها حرف R (ar, er, or) في الكلمات المنطوقة.

Speaking

- use key vocabulary to name and describe different types of technology. - يستخدم المفردات الأساسية لتسمية ووصف أنواع مختلفة من التكنولوجيا.
- ask and answer simple questions about technology use at home, school, and in the future. - يسأل ويجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول استخدام التكنولوجيا في المنزل والمدرسة وفي المستقبل.
- use "and, or, but" to connect spoken ideas in conversations. - يستخدم "and, or, but" لربط الأفكار المنطوقة في المحادثات.

Reading

- recognize basic technology-related vocabulary in short reading texts. - يتعرف على المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بالتكنولوجيا في نصوص القراءة القصيرة.
- follow short texts describing technology and its uses. - يتبع النصوص القصيرة التي تصف التكنولوجيا واستخداماتها.
- recognize conjunctions "and, or, but" in written context. - يتعرف على الروابط "and, or, but" في السياق المكتوب.

Writing

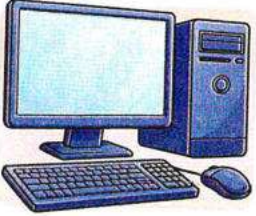
- use vocabulary related to technology to write short correct sentences. - يستخدم المفردات المتعلقة بالتكنولوجيا لكتابة جمل قصيرة صحيحة.
- use "and, or, but" correctly to join simple ideas in writing. - يستخدم "and, or, but" بشكل صحيح لربط الأفكار البسيطة في الكتابة.
- punctuate sentences using 'commas', with "and, or, but." - يستخدم علامات الترقيم في الجمل باستخدام "comma"، مع "and, or, but".

Main Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



computer

حاسب آلى (كمبيوتر)



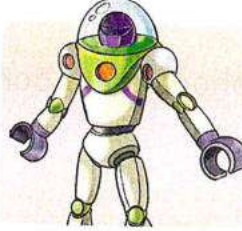
tablet

تابليت (جهاز لوحى)



phone

تليفون



robot

إنسان آلى



TV

تلفاز

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التى توجد فى صفحات 120/122.

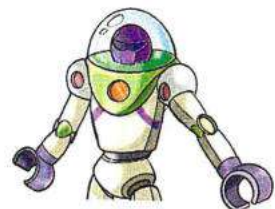
use (v)	يستخدم	schoolwork	الواجبات المدرسية	think (v)	يفكر
humans	بشر	technology	التكنولوجيا	devices	أجهزة
shop	محل	games	ألعاب	reading	القراءة
questions	أسئلة	remind (v)	يتذكر	choose (v)	يختار
start (v)	يبدأ				

✓ Checkpoint Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 TV 2 tablet 3 robot 4 phone



لاحظ (v) = فعل verb



Listen and read: _____

استمع واقرأ:



Ali: I have a computer and a tablet. I use the computer for schoolwork.
لدى جهاز كمبيوتر و تابلت (جهاز لوحى). أستخدمه لأداء واجباتى المدرسية.

Omar: I have a phone, but I don't have a computer at home.

لدى هاتف، ولكن ليس لدى جهاز كمبيوتر فى المنزل.



Ali: Do you like robots or computers?

هل تحب الروبوتات أم أجهزة الكمبيوتر؟

Omar: I like robots. They are smart and fun.

أنا أحب الروبوتات. إنها ذكية وممتعة.



Ali: Robots can help people, but they can't think like humans.

تستطيع الروبوتات مساعدة الناس، لكنها لا تستطيع التفكير كالبشر.

Omar: Maybe one day they will!

ربما سيفعلون ذلك يوماً ما!



Checkpoint

Read and complete: _____

اقرأ وأكمل:

(computer – phone – think – Robots)

- ① I use the for the schoolwork.
- ② are smart and fun.
- ③ Robots can't like humans.
- ④ I use my to talk to my friends. **SB**

B Language in Use

Conjunctions

الروابط

and

"و"

• To express additions.

- للتعبير عن الإضافات.

e.g. I have one sister **and** one brother.

لدى أخت وأخ.

e.g. I have a tablet **and** a robot.

لدى جهاز لوحى (تابليت) وإنسان آلى.

but

"لكن"

• To show contrast.

- لإظهار التناقض.

e.g. I like tennis, **but** I don't like basketball.

أنا أحب التنس، ولكن لا أحب كرة السلة.

e.g. The TV was off, **but** now it works.

التلفاز كان مغلقاً ولكن الآن يعمل.

or

"أو"

• To give choices.

- لإعطاء اختيارات.

e.g. Do you want milk **or** juice?

هل تريد اللبن أو العصير؟

e.g. Do you need a tablet **or** computer?

هل تحتاج التابلت أو الكمبيوتر؟



Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① I have a tablet (**or** – **and** – **but**) a computer.
- ② Robots are smart, (**but** – **or** – **and**) they can't think.
- ③ Would you like rice (**or** – **but** – **and**) pasta?
- ④ I want to play, (**or** – **and** – **but**) I have homework.
- ⑤ Sama likes apples (**or** – **and** – **but**) bananas.
- ⑥ He has a pen (**and** – **or** – **but**) a pencil.

Samy's Smart Start

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

Samy loves technology. He wants some devices such as a robot **and** a tablet, **but** he can only choose one for his birthday. Samy visits the shop with his dad. The tablet is good for games and reading. The robot can clean his room, answer questions, and remind him to do his homework. Samy thinks hard. "I like games, but I need help with my homework," he says. Samy chooses the robot. At home, the robot says, "Hello, Samy. Let's start your homework, **or** we will be late."



MORAL

Ask questions before making choices.

اطرح الأسئلة قبل اتخاذ الخيارات.

سامي يُحب التكنولوجيا. يريد بعض الأجهزة، مثل الإنسان الآلي والتابلت، لكنه لا يستطيع اختيار سوى واحد فقط لعيد ميلاده. يزور سامي المحل مع والده. التابلت جيد للألعاب والقراءة. يستطيع الروبوت تنظيف غرفته، والإجابة عن الأسئلة، وتذكيره بواجباته المدرسية. يفكر سامي بجدية. يقول: "أنا أحب الألعاب، لكنني أحتاج إلى مساعدة في واجباتك المدرسية". يختار سامي الروبوت. في المنزل، يقول الروبوت: "مرحبًا يا سامي. لنبدأ واجباتك المدرسية، وإلا ستأخر".

Checkpoint **Read and answer:** **SB** _____ اقرأ وأجب:

① What two things does Samy want for his birthday?

.....

② Who goes with Samy to the shop?

.....

③ What can the tablet do?

.....



Homework Time

ذاكر الكلمات حتى
تتمكن من تسميعها في
نهاية الوحدة
في صفحة 143.



Look and write: _____

انظر واكتب:



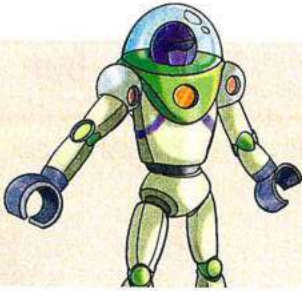
computer



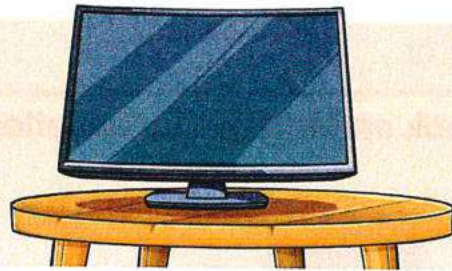
tablet



phone



robot



TV



Practice

on Lesson **1**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① My brother plays games on his
 a) pen b) tablet c) food
- ② Mona can call her friend on the
 a) phone b) technology c) TV
- ③ A can clean the house.
 a) robot b) tablet c) TV
- ④ I have a pencil an eraser.
 a) but b) or c) and
- ⑤ She is young strong.
 a) but b) and c) or
- ⑥ Would you like tea juice?
 a) and b) or c) but
- ⑦ I watch my favorite movie on the
 a) robot b) technology c) TV
- ⑧ Zain likes tablets, he doesn't like computers.
 a) or b) and c) but

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

①



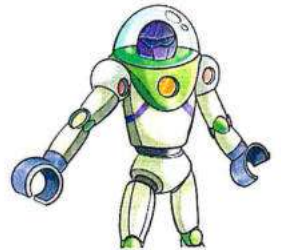
atble^t

②



hone^p

③



broo^t

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Technology is an important part of our lives today. A tablet is good for games and reading, I can read a book on it. A robot can clean my room. It can also remind me to do my homework.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 is an important part of our lives today.
a) Technology b) A game c) Homework
- 2 The word "remind" means to help me
a) play b) search c) remember

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What can I use to read a book?
- 4 What can the robot do?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 have – and – a tablet – I – a computer.
.....

- 2 pizza – Do – want – or – pasta – you?
.....

- 3 think – like – Robots – can't – humans.
.....

5 Punctuate the following: — ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 a computer is very useful

- 2 farida uses her phone to play games

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

"Technology in my life"
(phone – computer – study)

.....

.....

.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

search	camera	كاميرا	apps	تطبيقات
games	email	بريد إلكتروني		

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد
صفحة 128.

information	معلومات	clear photo	صور نقية
learn English (v)	يتعلم لغة إنجليزية	send (v)	يرسل
take a break (v)	يأخذ استراحة	healthier	بصحته أفضل

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

I **search** for information on the internet.

أنا أبحث عن المعلومات على الإنترنت.

My **camera** takes clear photos.

تلتقط كاميرتي صوراً نقية.

I use **apps** to learn English.

أستخدم التطبيقات لتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.

We play **games** after school.

نحن نلعب الألعاب بعد المدرسة.

I send **emails** every day.

أرسل رسائل البريد الإلكتروني كل يوم.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① I search for information on the (**games** – **internet** – **email**).
- ② We play (**apps** – **games** – **information**) after school.
- ③ I use (**apps** – **camera** – **games**) to learn English.

B Phonics Focus



Listen and repeat: _____

استمع وردد:

er	computer	حاسب آلي (كمبيوتر)	teacher	مُعلم / مُعلمة
	player	لاعب	letter	خطاب

ar	car	سيارة	star	نجمة
	park	حديقة عامة	guitar	جيتار
	farm	مزرعة		

or	corn	ذرة	horn	قرن
	fork	شوكة	short	قصير
	storm	عاصفة		



Checkpoint

1. 🎧 Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

📌 للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

📌 يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① lett_ _

② guit_ _

③ h_ _ n

④ p_ _ k

2. Sort the words into the correct column: _____ صنف الكلمات في العمود الصحيح: SB

(computer - farm - corn - letter - star - short
- teacher - car - storm - guitar)

er	ar	or

C Reading

The Busy Player

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

Omar plays games every day. He plays in the morning **and** in the evening. One day, he forgets to eat lunch. His sister says, "You must take a break." The next day, Omar plays games, **but** also goes outside to play football. He feels happier and healthier.



MORAL

Use technology in a balanced way.

استخدم التكنولوجيا بطريقة متوازنة.

يلعب عمر ألعابًا يوميًا. يلعب في الصباح وفي المساء. في أحد الأيام، ينسى عمر تناول الغداء. تقول له أخته: "يجب أن تأخذ استراحة". في اليوم التالي، يلعب عمر ألعابًا، ولكنه يخرج أيضًا للعب كرة القدم. يشعر بسعادة وصحة أفضل.

✓ **Checkpoint** 1. Read and complete: _____ انظر واكمل:

(eat – play – games – take)

- ① Omar plays every day.
- ② One day, he forgets to lunch.
- ③ He must a break.
- ④ He goes outside to football.

2. Read and answer: _____ اقرأ وأجب:

- ① When does Omar play games?
.....
- ② Who tells Omar to take a break?
.....



Practice

on Lesson **2**

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 teach__

2 c__n

3 play__

4 st__

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My father bought a new to take clear photos.

a) camera

b) computer

c) bag

2 I play on my phone. **SB**

a) internet

b) camera

c) games

3 She likes to for pictures of animals on the internet.

a) search

b) jump

c) write

4 I use many to learn English on my phone.

a) pencil

b) apps

c) cars

5 My grandpa is a farmer. He works on a

a) horn

b) car

c) farm

6 My teacher sent me an about the exam.

a) internet

b) app

c) email

7 He works in a school. He is a

a) teacher

b) player

c) farmer

3 Read and complete with the words below: _____ اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(camera – email – apps)

Technology is important. We can use the internet to search for information.

A camera helps us take photos. On our phones, we use ⁽¹⁾..... to play

games or learn. People also can send messages by ⁽²⁾.....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Technology is very important in our life. We use computers to study and play games. Phones help us talk to our family and friends. Students use the internet to search for information. Teachers sometimes send homework by email. We also use cameras to take nice pictures.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- ① help us talk to our family and friends.
a) Phones b) Cameras c) Homework
- ② Students use the internet to for information.
a) search b) play c) send

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ What do we use to study or play games?
- ④ How can we take nice pictures?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- ① play – after – games – We – school.
.....

- ② Omar – to learn – uses – apps – English.
.....

- ③ emails – Mona – sends – every day.
.....

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① some apps are fun, and some give us information
.....

- ② salwa writes an email to her friend
.....



Listen and say: _____

استمع وقل:

Main Vocabularyهذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي
توجد في صفحات 132 / 134.

screen	شاشة	button	زر	keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح
password	كلمة المرور	virus	فيروس	account	حساب

Extra Vocabulary

strong	قوى	get into	يدخل إلى
share (v)	يشارك	harm (v)	يؤذي / يضر
private	خاص	important	هام
fix (v)	يصلح		

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

Don't look at the **screen** for too long.

لا تنظر إلى الشاشة لفترة طويلة.

Press the power **button** to turn on a device.

اضغط على زر التشغيل لتشغيل الجهاز.

I type with the **keyboard**.

أنا أكتب باستخدام لوحة المفاتيح.

My **password** is secret.

كلمة المرور الخاصة بي سرية.

A **virus** can harm your computer.

يمكن أن يضر الفيروس بجهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بك.



Listen and read: _____

استمع واقرأ:



Amina: Wow! My new computer looks great. The screen is so big!

واو! الكمبيوتر الجديد الخاص بي يبدو جميلاً. الشاشة كبيرة جداً!



Marwa: Yes! And you have a new keyboard too.

نعم! ولديك لوحة مفاتيح جديدة أيضاً.



Amina: I need to make a strong password so no one can get into my account.

أحتاج إلى إنشاء كلمة مرور قوية حتى لا يتمكن أحد من الدخول إلى حسابي.



Marwa: That's a good idea. A good password has numbers and letters.

إنها فكرة جيدة. كلمة المرور الجيدة تحتوى على أرقام وحروف.



Amina: You're right. I will do that.

أنتِ على حق. سأفعل ذلك.



Marwa: And remember not to share your password with strangers.

وتذكرى ألا تشاركي كلمة المرور الخاصة بك مع الغرباء.



Amina: Thank you, Marwa. Let's play a game on it.

شكراً لك يا مروة، هيا بنا نلعب لعبة عليه.

Definitions

keyboard	lets you type letters and numbers	يتيح لك كتابة الحروف والأرقام
screen	shows pictures, videos, and texts	يعرض الصور ومقاطع الفيديو والنصوص
virus	a harmful program that can damage your computer	برنامج ضار يمكن أن يدمر جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بك
password	letters and numbers you type to unlock something	الحروف والأرقام التي تكتبها لفتح شيء ما
button	small part you press to make something work	جزء صغير تضغط عليه لجعل شيء ما يعمل

B Language in Use

The Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Use:

• يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن شيء سوف تفعله / لن تفعله في المستقبل.

Form:

Affirmative Form

صيغة الإثبات

will + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g. I will play games after school.

سوف أَلعبُ أَلعابًا بعد المدرسة.

e.g. I will visit my grandparents next week.

سوف أزور أجدادي الأسبوع القادم.

Negative Form

صيغة النفي

will not + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g. I won't share my password.

أنا لن أشارك كلمة المرور الخاصة بي.

e.g. I won't forget to make a strong password.

لن أنسى أن أعمل كلمة سر قوية.



Tip!

will not = won't

لاحظ الاختصارات:



Checkpoint

Complete with "will/ won't": _____ أكمل باستخدام "will /won't": _____

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.

① I make a strong password.

② I share my password.

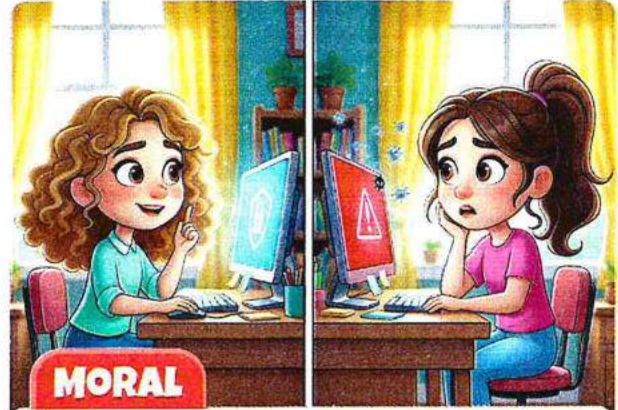
③ I play games with my friend.

④ He take photos with his camera.

The secret password

Look and read: _____ أنظر واقرأ:

Laila's friend asks for her password. She says, "No, that's private." Her friend laughs and says it's not important. The next day, her friend's computer gets a virus from a game. Laila helps her fix it and shows how to make a strong password. Her friend says, "I **will** never share my password again."



MORAL
Keep your information private.
حافظ على خصوصية معلوماتك.

تسأل صديقة ليلي عن كلمة المرور الخاصة بها. قالت: "لا، هذا خاص بي". تضحك صديقتها وتقول إنه ليس مهمًا. في اليوم التالي، يصاب جهاز صديقتها بفيروس من لعبة. تساعد ليلي صديقتها في إصلاحه وتشرح لها كيفية إنشاء كلمة مرور قوية. تقول صديقتها: "لن أشارك كلمة المرور الخاصة بي مرة أخرى".

Checkpoint Fill in the blanks using words from the box: **SB**

أكمل الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(password – virus – private – strong)

- ① Laila's password is
- ② Her friend's computer got a
- ③ Laila's friend asks for her
- ④ Laila showed her how to make a password.



Practice

on Lesson **3**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 It is not good to look at the for a long time. **SB**

- a) keyboard b) bag c) screen

2 Press the to turn on the computer.

- a) button b) keyboard c) screen

3 You need a strong to protect your account.

- a) virus b) password c) computer

4 A can harm your computer.

- a) screen b) password c) virus

5 I use a for typing. **SB**

- a) button b) keyboard c) screen

6 She watch TV because she is tired.

- a) won't b) will c) does

7 We have a test next week.

- a) want b) will c) is

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(secret – password – virus)

Nour : Can you give me your

Hana: Sorry, it is

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We use computers, phones, and tablets every day. Technology helps us learn and have fun. But we must be safe online, we should keep our password secret. We should not tell strangers about it. A virus can damage our computer, so we must be careful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- ① We use computers, phones, and every day.
a) tables b) tablets c) toys
- ② Technology helps us and have fun.
a) learn b) eat c) sleep

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ How can we be safe online?
- ④ What can damage the computer?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- ① type – We – the – with – keyboard.
.....
- ② tomorrow – will – football – play – I .
.....
- ③ computer – A virus – can – your – harm.
.....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ① hamza will fix my computer
- ② i won't share my password

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“Using technology safely”
(password – strangers – virus)

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

.....

.....

.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي
توجد في صفحات 138 / 139:

drone	طائرة بدون طيار	smart home	منزل ذكي
robot	إنسان آلي	internet	إنترنت

Extra Vocabulary

turn on (v)	يشغل	lights	الأضواء	watch (v)	يشاهد
smartphone	هاتف ذكي	voice	صوت	order (v)	يطلب
drop (v)	يسقط	warm (v)	يدفئ	smile	ابتسامة
fast	سريع	the best	الأفضل		

Important sentences

جمل هامة:

A **drone** can take photos from the sky.

يمكن للطائرة بدون طيار التقاط الصور من السماء.

My **smart home** turns on the lights.

منزلي الذكي يقوم بتشغيل الأضواء.

A **robot** can help clean my room.

يمكن للروبوت أن يساعد في تنظيف غرفتي.

I learn a lot of things from the **internet**.

أتعلم الكثير من الأشياء من الإنترنت.



Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Hassan: Hi, Ahmed! What are you doing?

مرحبًا يا أحمد! ماذا تفعل؟

Ahmed: I'm watching a video about drones.

أنا أشاهد فيديو عن الطائرات بدون طيار.



Hassan: Amazing! What does it do?

رائع! ماذا تفعل؟

Ahmed: It flies and takes photos from the sky.

إنها تطير وتلتقط الصور من السماء.



Hassan: That's so cool!

هذا رائع جدًا!

Ahmed: I'd like to have a toy drone one day.

أحب أن أحصل على طائرة بدون طيار يومًا ما.



Hassan: My dream is to have a smart home one day.

حلمي أن يكون لدى منزل ذكي يومًا ما.

Ahmed: Me too! The lights, TV, and doors can work with just your voice.

أنا أيضًا! الأضواء والتلفزيون والأبواب تعمل بصوتك فقط.



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(smart – voice – takes)

① The drone flies and photos from the sky.

② Hassan wants to have a home one day.

③ In smart homes, TVs, lights, and doors can work with your

B Reading

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The Drone Delivery

In 2050, Karim orders lunch on his smartphone. A drone flies to his window and drops the food. The smart home warms the food for him. Later, Karim visits his grandmother. She has no drone, but she has warm bread and a big smile. Karim eats lunch with her and says, "Technology is fast, but family is the best."



MORAL

Technology is fast, but family is the best.

التكنولوجيا سريعة، لكن العائلة هي الأفضل.

في عام ٢٠٥٠، يطلب كريم الغداء عبر هاتفه الذكي. تحلق طائرة بدون طيار إلى نافذته وتسقط الطعام. يقوم المنزل الذكي بتدفئة الطعام له. لاحقاً، يزور كريم جدته. لم تكن لديها طائرة بدون طيار، لكنها لديها خبز دافئ وابتسامة عريضة. يتناول كريم الغداء معها ويقول: "التكنولوجيا سريعة، لكن العائلة هي الأفضل."

✓ **Checkpoint** Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

① visits – Karim – grandma – his.

② the food – The drone – and drops – flies.

③ orders – on – Karim – his smartphone – lunch.

④ warms – the food – home – The – smart.



Practice

on Lesson

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** A can take photos from the sky.
a) technology b) car c) drone
- 2** In a, the lights turn on by voice.
a) smart home b) drone c) computer
- 3** I use the to learn new things.
a) virus b) internet c) smart home
- 4** The can move, talk, and clean the floor.
a) drone b) smart home c) robot
- 5** My cousin plays games on the **SB**
a) internet b) smart home c) keyboard

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(drone – turn on – internet)

I live in a smart home. The lights turn on when we come home. The robot can clean the floor. My dad uses the (1) to find information. On weekends, we play with our (2) in the park. It can fly high and take pictures.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Sarah. I live in a smart home. When I wake up, the lights turn on by themselves. The smart speaker says, "Good morning!". The robot cleans the floor. My dad uses the internet to work on his computer. In the evening, the smart home turns off the TV and the lights. I love living in a smart home.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Sarah lives in a
a) small house b) smart home c) big home
- 2 The smart speaker says, ".....!"
a) Good night b) Hello c) Good morning

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who cleans the floor?
- 4 Who uses the internet?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 grandmother – no – drone – My – has.
.....

- 2 information – internet – The – us – gives.
.....

- 3 help – I – will – you – the homework – with.
.....

SB

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 technology is all around us

- 2 Next friday, I will visit my grandma

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 📌

"A smart home"

(robot – drones – technology)

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى
تمكين الطالب من
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء
التي وردت في الوحدة.

Lesson (1)

computer	حاسب آلي	tablet	تابليت (جهات لوحى)	phone	هاتف
robot	إنسان آلي	TV	تلفاز	schoolwork	الواجبات المدرسية

Lesson (2)

search	يبحث	camera	كاميرا	games	ألعاب
apps	تطبيقات	information	معلومات	email	البريد الإلكتروني

Lesson (3)

screen	شاشة	password	كلمة المرور	virus	فيروس
button	زر	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح	account	حساب
strong	قوى	private	خاص	share	يشارك
turn on	يشغل	secret	سر	fix	يصلح

Lesson (4)

drone	طائرة بدون طيار	smart home	منزل ذكى	order	يطلب
internet	الإنترنت	smartphone	هاتف ذكى	technology	التكنولوجيا

Phonics Focus

"er"	teacher مُعلم / مُعلمة	computer حاسب آلي (كمبيوتر)	player لاعب	letter خطاب	father أب
"ar"	car سيارة	star نجمة	park حديقة عامة	guitar جيتار	farm مزرعة
"or"	corn ذرة	horn قرن	fork شوكة	short قصير	storm عاصفة

Language in Use

Conjunctions

and "و"

To express additions

للتعبير عن الإضافات

e.g. I have one sister and one brother.
لدى أخت وأخ.

but "لكن"

To show contrast لإظهار التناقض

e.g. I like tennis, but I don't like basketball.
أنا أحب التنس، ولكن لا أحب كرة السلة.

or "أو"

To give choices لإعطاء اختيارات

e.g. Do you want milk or juice?
هل تريد اللبن أو العصير؟

The Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Affirmative Form صيغة الإثبات

will + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.

e.g. I will play games after school.
سوف أَلْعَب ألعابًا بعد المدرسة.

Negative Form صيغة النفي

will not + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.

e.g. I won't share my password.
أنا لن أشارك كلمة المرور الخاصة بى.



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى التأكد من إتقان الطالب لأهم المفردات اللغوية وفهمها باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.



Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

الكلمة باللغة العربية

الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية

Lesson (1)

computer

.....

.....

تلفاز

tablet

.....

.....

أجهزة

phone

.....

.....

يستخدم

robot

.....

.....

يفكر

technology

.....

.....

الواجبات المدرسية

Lesson (2)

search

.....

.....

يرسل

information

.....

.....

لاعب

email

.....

.....

تطبيقات

camera

.....

.....

نجمة

games

.....

.....

شوكة

Lesson (3)

screen

.....

.....

هام

virus

.....

.....

زر

account

.....

.....

كلمة المرور

keyboard

.....

.....

خاص

strong

.....

.....

يصلح

Lesson (4)

drone

.....

.....

يدفئ

drop

.....

.....

صوت

smart home

.....

.....

أضواء

turn on

.....

.....

هاتف ذكي

Unit 4 Writing Corner



تتضمن هذه الصفحة
تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Tip 1:

ابدأ الجملة أو أسماء الأشخاص
بحرف كبير "Capital letter".

"Online safety"

(password – accounts – safe)

Tip 2:

ضع (full stop) في نهاية الجملة.

Online safety is very important for everyone. We should use strong passwords to protect our accounts. Following rules online helps us stay safe while using the internet every day.

Tip 3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وتأكد من كتابتك للكلمات بشكل صحيح correct.

Tip 4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في كتابة جمل صحيحة.

"Technology in my life"

(phone – computer – internet)

I use my phone every day to call my friends. My computer helps me study and do homework. I search for information on the internet.

"My smartphone"

(call – camera – games)

My smartphone helps me call my family and friends. I use the camera to take nice photos. Sometimes, I play games on it for fun.

Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Using technology every day"

(computer – tablet – internet)

.....

.....

.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 2 Fill in the blanks using words from the box:** ————— املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

3 Fill in the blanks using and, but, or: _____ : and, but, or املا الفراغات باستخدام

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 guit__ 2 sh__t 3 st__m 4 teach__

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 3

- 1 People use a to take pictures from the sky.
a) pen b) chair c) drone
- 2 I like to watch cartoons on the
a) keyboard b) smart home c) TV
- 3 I share my password to be safe.
a) am b) will c) won't
- 4 Does he want a robot a tablet?
a) and b) or c) but
- 5 I like tennis, I don't like basketball.
a) and b) or c) but
- 6 Some help me read stories and practice English.
a) apps b) fruits c) toys

3 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 1

(computer – learn – games)

Hamza and Malek are friends. They like using technology every day. Hamza plays ⁽¹⁾ on his tablet, and Malek uses the computer to study. They both use the internet to ⁽²⁾ new things.

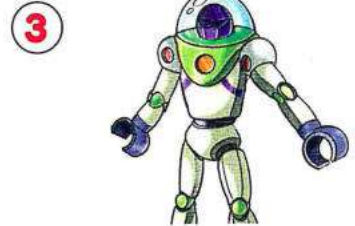
4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: 3



amerac



onedr



borot



A. Language Functions

1



اسمِع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- ① Farida has a (computer – ball – doll) and a tablet.
- ② Farida uses the (computer – TV – phone) for her schoolwork.
- ③ Farida likes (robots – dogs – cars) because they are smart.

B. Reading

2

Fill in the missing letters:

املأ الحروف الناقصة:

8

1



s_r_en

2



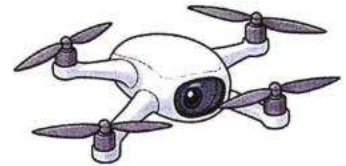
t_bl_t

3



vi_u_

4



d_o_e

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- ① I use a (screen – mouse – keyboard) to type on my computer.
- ② A (desk – computer – drone) can fly in the sky.
- ③ Sarah (will – won't – is) eat sweets because they are not healthy.
- ④ I want to play outside, (and – or – but) it's raining.

D. Writing

4 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 technology is all around us

2 Next thursday, we will buy a car

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

1 pizza – Do – want – or – pasta – you?

2 study – download – People – to – apps.

3 tomorrow – will – football – play – I.

4 information – internet – The – us – gives.

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“Using technology safely”
(password – internet – search)

Al-Adwaa Revision-March

المراجعة الشهرية الخاصة بمقرر شهر مارس.



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): ————— استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- A ① comput— ② s_l— ③ h_p— ④ c—
B ① lett— ② sh_ _t ③ h_ _n ④ k_t—

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A ① The firefighter is a real who saves people from danger.
a) hero b) athlete c) teacher
② Tomorrow, Ahmed play football.
a) am b) is c) will
③ The winner got a gold for her great work.
a) helmet b) medal c) meal
④ My sister is really because she always supports her friends.
a) far b) bad c) helpful
⑤ We should show to our parents and teachers.
a) noise b) anger c) respect
⑥ The sports day was a big school
a) job b) event c) trouble
- B ① The firefighter wears a special at work.
a) uniform b) medal c) toy
② First, I brush my teeth., I eat breakfast.
a) First b) Then c) Than
③ Always keep your secret.
a) password b) app c) game
④ Do you like to play football tennis?
a) and b) or c) but
⑤ The firefighter is brave kind.
a) and b) or c) but
⑥ The helps us find information from all over the world.
a) button b) internet c) email

3 Read and complete with the words below: ————— اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

A (rescue – uniform – ladder)

The firefighter is brave and helpful. The firefighter is a real hero. He wears his ⁽¹⁾..... every morning. When there is a fire, he uses a ⁽²⁾..... to climb up high. He works hard to rescue people and keep them safe.

B (apps – email – games)

I have a phone. I use the camera to take a picture. I play ⁽¹⁾..... on my phone. I also send messages by ⁽²⁾..... I use apps to learn English, too.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: ————— أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

A ① the – keyboard – with – type – I.

.....

② my homework – will – I – tomorrow – do.

.....

B ① Omar – First, – hard – trained.

.....

② wears – The police officer – a uniform.

.....

5 Punctuate the following: ————— ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① do you think he is a hero

② asmaa is a policewoman in cairo.

B ① what can the tablet do

② i won't share my password

Al-Adwaa Tests-March

Model

1

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📢

1 teach _ _

2 m_k _

3 st_ _

4 c_r

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 I watch cartoons on every evening.

a) TV

b) keyboard

c) apps

2 Do you prefer chips cookies?

a) and

b) but

c) or

3 A can fly in the sky and take pictures from above.

a) screen

b) app

c) drone

4 He took a picture with his new

a) camera

b) password

c) keyboard

5 We download on our phones to play or learn.

a) privacy

b) meals

c) apps

6 I like apples bananas.

a) but

b) and

c) or

7 Press the power to turn on a device.

a) button

b) virus

c) table

8 A can damage your device.

a) password

b) virus

c) future

Writing

3 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:



leteath



uttonb



ruvis

Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 st _ _ m

2 farm _ _

3 n _ m _

4 p _ _ k

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Do you want tea coffee?

a) and

b) but

c) or

2 He can swim, he can't play football.

a) and

b) but

c) or

3 I for information on the internet.

a) taste

b) sleep

c) search

4 She come to school tomorrow because she is sick.

a) will

b) won't

c) is

5 She called her friend on the

a) phone

b) button

c) keyboard

6 A is smaller than a computer, but bigger than a phone.

a) virus

b) drone

c) tablet

7, I wake up in the morning.

a) First

b) Then

c) And

8 A good teacher can students to do their best.

a) forget

b) inspire

c) stop

Writing

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

1 computer – use – Can – this – you?

2 unhealthy – won't – We – food – eat.

3 honest – kind – and – She – is.

4 will – you – an email – send – I.

1



Listen and choose the correct answer: ————— استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —————

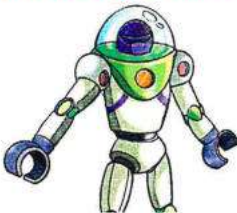
للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

- 1 Doctor Ali wears a special (helmet – shoes – uniform) to show he is a doctor.
- 2 He checks (patients – athletes – toys) and gives them the help they need.
- 3 He sometimes works with a (teacher – team – pilot) to give the best care.

2

Fill in the missing letters: ————— املأ الحروف الناقصة: —————

1



_o_ot

2



p_ _ne

3



h_r_

4



fa_me_

3

Choose the correct answer: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —————

- 1 The (screen – keyboard – button) helps you type words.
- 2 She likes reading, drawing, (or – but – and) painting.
- 3 The (clock – alarm – phone) rings when there is a fire.
- 4 First, he puts on his helmet. (First – Or – Then), he runs to the fire truck.

4

Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“A hero”

(firefighter – brave – save)

.....

.....

.....



Module 3

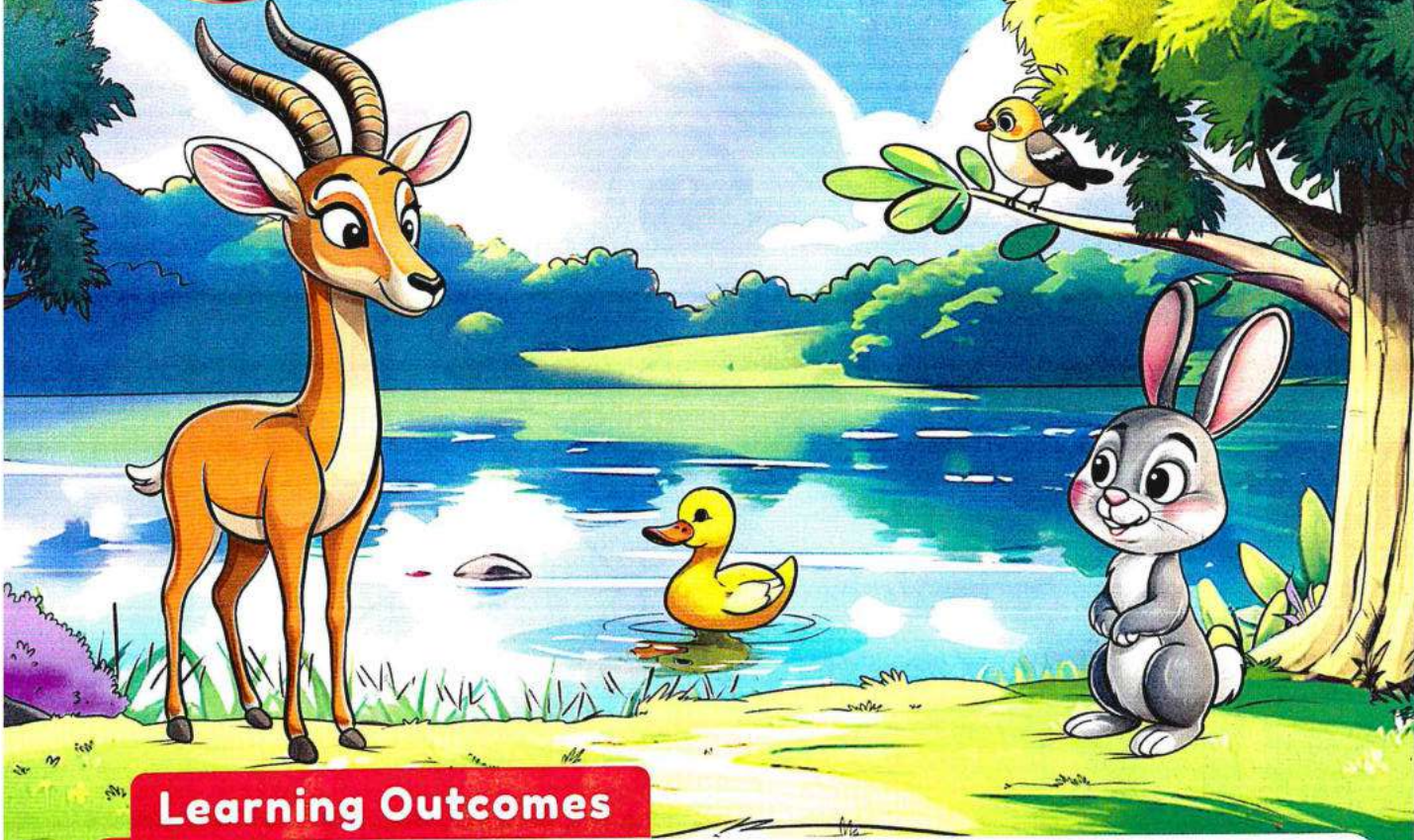
Unit 5 Animals and Habitats

Unit 6 The Honest Choice

Unit 5

Animals and Habitats

الحيوانات ومواطنها



Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- recognize key words about animals and their habitats in short spoken texts.
يتعرف الكلمات الأساسية المتعلقة بالحيوانات ومواطنها في نصوص قصيرة منطوقة.
- recognize supporting details about animals and their habitats in short spoken texts.
يتعرف على تفاصيل إضافية عن الحيوانات ومواطنها في نصوص قصيرة منطوقة.
- distinguish between the patterns of "oo" and "ow" when listened to.
يميز بين صوتي "oo" و "ow" عند الاستماع.

Speaking

- name habitats and animal body parts clearly.
يسمى مواطن الحيوانات وأجزاء الجسم الخاصة بهم بوضوح.
- use adjectives to describe animals and their homes in short sentences.
يستخدم الصفات لوصف الحيوانات ومواطنها في جمل قصيرة.
- discuss what different animals "can/can't" do.
يناقش ما تستطيع الحيوانات فعله وما لا تستطيع فعله.

Reading

- identify key vocabulary about habitats, animals, and their features.
يتعرف على المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بالمواطن، والحيوانات، وخصائصها.
- recognize specific information about where animals live and what they can do.
يتعرف على معلومات محددة حول أماكن عيش الحيوانات وما يمكنها فعله.

Writing

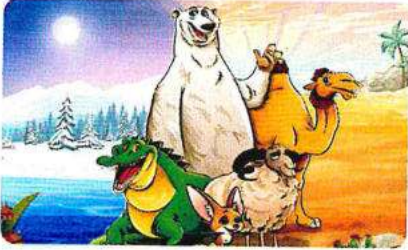
- label pictures of animals and habitats with correct vocabulary.
يسمى صور الحيوانات ومواطنها باستخدام المفردات الصحيحة.
- use "can / can't" to write about animals' abilities.
يستخدم "can / can't" للكتابة عن قدرات الحيوانات.
- write sentences about protecting nature, animals, and their homes.
يكتب جملًا حول حماية الطبيعة والحيوانات وبيئاتها.



Listen, point, and say: _____

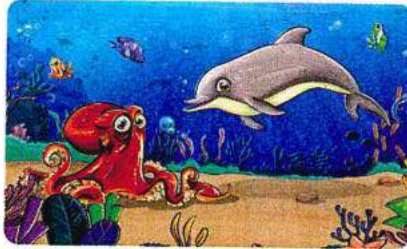
استمع، أشر وقل: _____

Main Vocabulary



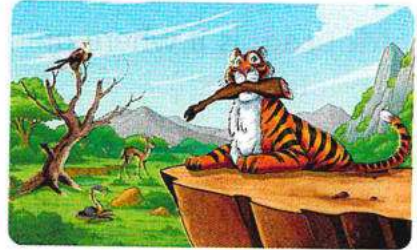
habitat

موطن



ocean

محيط



wild

بري



desert

صحراء



forest

غابة

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي توجد في الصفحات 158/159. 📌

owned by (v)

مملوك لـ

lizards

السحالي

discover (v)

يكشف



Checkpoint

Read and match: _____

اقرأ وصل: _____

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية. 📌

1

wild

2

ocean

3

forest

4

desert



لاحظ أن فعل (v) = verb 📌



Listen and read: _____ استمع واقرأ:



Teacher: Good morning! Today, we will talk about animals and their homes. What is a home for an animal?

صباح الخير! اليوم سنتحدث عن الحيوانات ومواطنها. ما هو موطن الحيوان؟



Mourad: Is it where animals live?

هل هو المكان الذي تعيش فيه الحيوانات؟



Teacher: Yes! A habitat is where animals live.

نعم! الموطن هو المكان الذي تعيش فيه الحيوانات.



Karma: Can you give us an example?

هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالاً؟



Teacher: A forest has tall trees. Many animals live there.

الغابة تحتوى على أشجار طويلة. تعيش هناك العديد من الحيوانات.



Mourad: What does "wild" mean?

ماذا تعنى كلمة «برى»؟



Teacher: "Wild" means animals that live in nature and not owned by people.

تعنى كلمة «برى» الحيوانات التى تعيش فى الطبيعة ولا يملكها الناس.



Mourad: What about the ocean?

ماذا عن المحيط؟



Teacher: The ocean is big and salty.

المحيط كبير ومياهه مالحة.



Karma: Lizards live in the desert.

تعيش السحالي فى الصحراء.



Teacher: Yes! Let's discover more about animals and their homes.

نعم! هيا نكتشف المزيد عن الحيوانات ومواطنها.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The world is full of amazing places where animals live. Each animal has a **special home**⁽¹⁾, called a habitat, that helps it **survive**⁽²⁾. A hot, sandy place with little water is a desert. A cool, **shady**⁽³⁾ place with lots of trees is a forest. The big, blue ocean is a home for fish and dolphins.



(1)

موطن خاص

(2)

يبقى على قيد الحياة (ينجو)

(3)

ظليل (يملؤه الظل)

العالم ممتلئ بالأماكن الرائعة التي تعيش فيها الحيوانات. لكل حيوان منزل خاص يُسمى موطنًا، يساعده على البقاء على قيد الحياة. فالمكان الحار الممتلئ بالرمال وقليل الماء هو الصحراء، والمكان البارد الظليل الذي يحتوي على الكثير من الأشجار هو الغابة، أما المحيط الأزرق الكبير فهو منزل للأسماك والدلافين.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

أختر الإجابة الصحيحة: SB

1 What is a hot, sandy place with little water called?

a) an ocean

b) a forest

c) a desert

2 What is a habitat?

a) a type of tree

b) a big, blue place

c) a special home for an animal

3 Each animal has a special home that helps it

a) survive

b) discover

c) talk

B Phonics Focus

The /u:/ and /ʊ/ Sounds



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

The letters "oo" can be tricky because they can sound different. Sometimes they are long, like in "moon", and sometimes short, like in "book".

حرفا الـ oo يمكن أن يكونا محيرين لأنهما يمكن أن يصدرا أصواتًا مختلفة. أحيانًا يكونان طويلين، مثل كلمة "moon"، وأحيانًا يكونان قصيرين، مثل كلمة "book".

Long oo /u:/



moon
قمر



zoo
حديقة حيوان

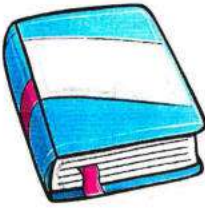


pool
حمام سباحة



food
طعام

Short oo /ʊ/



book
كتاب



foot
قدم



look
ينظر



cook
يطهى



Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing letter(s): استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1



m__n

2



l__k

3



f__d

4



z__

C Language in Use

Adjectives

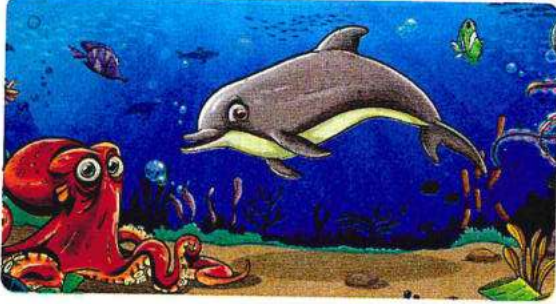
الصفات

Adjectives are words that describe nouns (people, places, or things).

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء (الأشخاص، الأماكن، أو الأشياء).

- We use adjectives to describe animals and their homes.

e.g.



A **deep** ocean. محيط عميق.

لاحظ أن كلمة **deep** تصف المحيط. 📢

e.g.



A **hot** desert. صحراء حارة.

لاحظ أن كلمة **hot** تصف الصحراء. 📢

e.g.



A **wild** kangaroo. كنجغر بري.

لاحظ أن كلمة **wild** تصف الكنجغر. 📢

e.g.



A **tall** tree. شجرة طويلة.

لاحظ أن كلمة **tall** تصف الشجرة. 📢



Checkpoint

Read and circle the adjectives: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الصفات: _____

① hot – desert – ocean

② wild – lion – tree

③ discover – tall – talk

④ forest – desert – deep

D Reading and Writing

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The Curious Fox

Foxy the fox loved to explore. One day, he wandered out of his forest habitat. He saw a huge, blue ocean. The salty water was so different from the fresh water in his forest. He saw a dry, sandy desert with no trees. Foxy realized that his own forest, with its cool shade and tall trees, was the perfect place for him. He learned that every animal has a special home that is just right.



فوكسي الثعلب كان يحب الاستكشاف. في يوم من الأيام، تجوّل خارج موطن غابته. رأى محيطاً كبيراً أزرق اللون. كان الماء المالح مختلفاً تماماً عن الماء العذب في غابته. رأى صحراء جافة ورملية بلا أشجار. أدرك فوكسي أن غابته الخاصة، بظلها البارد وأشجارها الطويلة، هي المكان المثالي له. تعلم أن لكل حيوان موطناً خاصاً يناسبه تماماً.

Vocabulary

salty water	مياه مالحة	fresh water	مياه عذبة	curious	فضولي
fox	ثعلب	huge	ضخم	dry	جاف
shade	ظل	perfect	مثالي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
explore يستكشف	explored	realize يدرك	realized
wander يتجول	wandered	learn يتعلم	learned



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(trees – fresh – explore)

- 1 Foxy the fox loves to
- 2 The salty water was so different from the water.
- 3 Foxy saw a dry, sandy desert with no



Homework Time

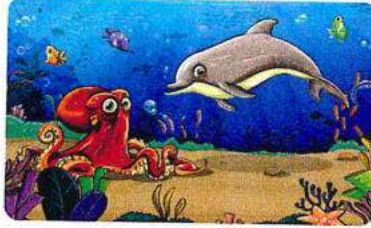
ذاكر الكلمات حتى
تتمكن من تسميعها في
نهاية الوحدة
في صفحة 185.

Look and write:

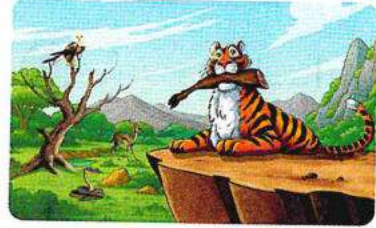
انظر واكتب:



habitat



ocean



wild



desert



forest



Practice

on Lesson

1

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

l _ _ k

2

b _ _ k

3

p _ _ l

4

f _ _ t

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1

Dolphins swim in the

a) forest

b) ocean

c) desert

2

The is full of tall trees.

a) forest

b) ocean

c) desert

3

A is where animals live.

a) hotel

b) habitat

c) hospital

4

The trees in the forest are

a) short

b) fat

c) tall

5

Lizards live in the

a) desert

b) ocean

c) sea

6

Lions and tigers are animals.

a) sea

b) farm

c) wild

7

A/An is a big area of salty water. **SB**

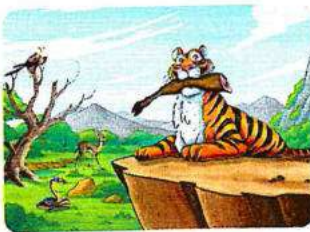
a) forest

b) ocean

c) desert

3 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

1



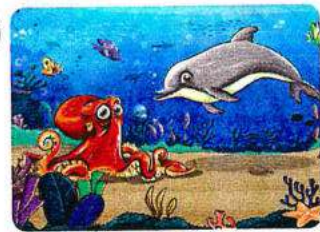
liwd

2



esfort

3



ceon

4 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Foxy the fox loved to explore. One day, he wandered out of his forest habitat. He saw a huge, blue ocean. The salty water was so different from the fresh water in his forest. He saw a dry, sandy desert with no trees. Foxy realized that his own forest, with its cool shade and tall trees, was the perfect place for him.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- ① Foxy wandered out of his
a) ocean b) forest c) desert
- ② The word "sandy" means full of
a) water b) animals c) sand

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ What was the salty water different from?
- ④ Which was the perfect place for the fox?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- ① habitat – animals – in – live – Many – their.
- ② protect – We – animals – should – wild.
- ③ trees – The forest – many – tall – has. 

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- what is a habitat

7 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

"My favorite wild animal"
(meat – forest – strong)

.....
.....
.....



Listen, point, and say: _____

استمع، أشر وقل: _____

Main Vocabulary



fur

فرو



feathers

ريش



hoof

حافر



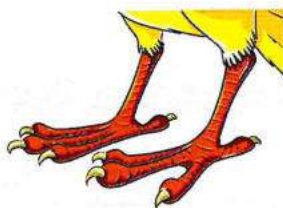
nest

عش



paw

كف/قدم الحيوان



claws

مخالب



tail

ذيل

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النصوص التي توجد في الصفحات 167/168.

sharp

حاد soft

ناعمر push away

يدفع بعيداً

flies

ذباب safe

آمن squirrel

سنجاب

coat

غطاء bushy

كثيف branches

فروع الشجرة

cozy

مريح leaves

أوراق الشجر



Checkpoint

Read and match: _____

اقرأ وصل: _____

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

1

nest

2

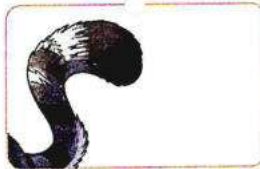
hoof

3

claws

4

tail



Note

• لاحظ أن كلمة "hoof" جمعها "hooves".



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Animals have different body parts that help them live. A furry bear has big paws and sharp claws. A bird has soft feathers and a long tail. The bird builds its nest high in a tree. A horse has hooves on its feet and a tail to push away flies. Their body parts help them stay safe in their habitats.

الحيوانات لها أجزاء جسم مختلفة تساعد على العيش. الدب ذو الفرو لديه مخالب كبيرة وأظافر حادة. الطائر لديه ريش ناعم وذيل طويل. يبني الطائر عشه عاليًا في الشجرة. الحصان لديه حوافر في قدميه وذيل يدفع به الذباب بعيدًا. تساعد أجزء أجسامهم على البقاء آمنين في مواطنهم.



Tip!

Adjectives tell us more about nouns.

- الصفات تخبرنا أكثر عن الأسماء.

e.g. a furry bear – sharp claws

• لاحظ أن كلمة "furry" تصف الدب، وكلمة "sharp" تصف المخالب.



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(bird – push – paws)

- 1 A furry bear has big
- 2 A has soft feathers.
- 3 A horse has a tail to away flies.

B Reading and Writing

انظر واقرأ:

Look and read:

The Squirrel's Home



Squeaky the squirrel was very busy. He had a furry coat and a long, bushy tail. He used his sharp claws to climb up the tall tree. High in the branches, he had a cozy nest of leaves. He gathered nuts to keep his family safe. He was so happy with his home.

كان السنجاب سكويكي مشغولاً جداً. كان لديه فراء ناعم وذيل طويل وكثيف. استخدم مخالبه الحادة ليتسلق الشجرة الطويلة. عالياً بين الفروع، كان لديه عش مريح مصنوع من أوراق الأشجار. كان يجمع المكسرات ليحافظ على أمان عائلته. كان سعيداً جداً بمنزله.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
use يستخدم	used	climb يتسلق	climbed
gather يجمع	gathered		



Checkpoint

Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

(nuts – furry – claws)

- 1 Squeaky had a coat.
- 2 He used his sharp to climb up the tall tree.
- 3 He gathered to keep his family safe.

C Writing

My Animal Fact Card

▶ Read and notice: _____ اقرأ ولاحظ:

Name of animal:

Panda

Adjectives:

① furry

② cute

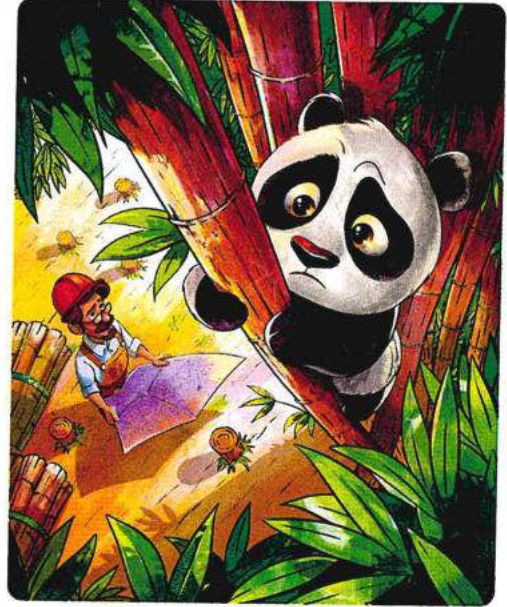
Habitat:

forest

Write your sentences:

① The panda is furry and cute.

② It lives in the forest.



Remember

Use adjectives from the lesson.

استخدم صفات من الدرس.

Start the sentences with a capital letter and end with a period.

ابدأ الجمل بحرف كبير وأنه بنقطة.



Practice

on Lesson **2**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A horse has four

a) claws

b) feathers

c) hooves

2 A bird's home is called a **SB**

a) cave

b) nest

c) tail

3 A furry bear has big

a) paws

b) hooves

c) feathers

4 A bird has soft all over its body.

a) claws

b) feathers

c) fur

5 The cat has soft, white

a) fur

b) hooves

c) claws

6 The tree had many long

a) hands

b) feet

c) branches

2 Read and complete with the words below: _____ اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(builds – tree – fly)

I like birds. A bird has soft feathers. It helps them to ⁽¹⁾ It ⁽²⁾
its nest high in a tree .

3 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Horses are big animals. They have smooth hair coats on their bodies. A horse has a tail to push away flies. Its feet have hard hooves to help it run fast. I love horses.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 Horses are animals.

a) small

b) big

c) short

2 Horses have smooth on their bodies.

a) hair coats

b) feathers

c) wool

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does a horse use its tail for?

4 Why do horses have hard hooves on their feet?

4 **Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

1 tail – bushy – The squirrel – a long, – has.

2 paws – bear – big – has – A furry.

3 parts – body – have – different – Animals. 

5 **Punctuate the following:** _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- a tiger has sharp claws and strong legs

6 **Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:**

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاوب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

“My cat”

(paws – fluffy – cute)



Listen, point, and say: _____

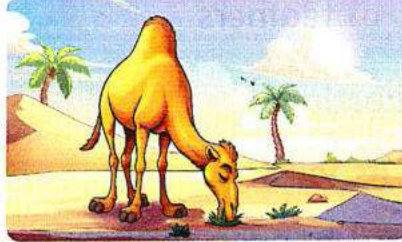
استمع، أشر وقل: _____

Main Vocabulary



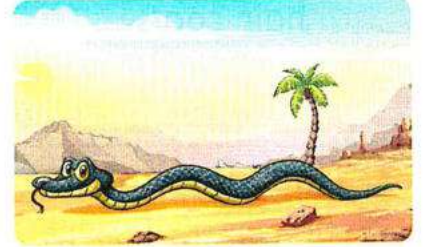
shelter

مأوى



survive

يبقى على قيد الحياة



crawl

يزحف



fly

يطير



swim

يسبح/ يعوم

Extra Vocabulary

هذه الكلمات تساعدك على فهم النص الذي يوجد في صفحة 173. 📖

cave

كهف dry

جاف



Checkpoint

Read and match: _____

اقرأ وصل: _____

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للمفردات اللغوية. 📖

①

shelter

②

crawl

③

fly

④

swim





Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Noha: Wow! Look at the bear. Where does it live?

واو! انظري إلى الدب. أين يعيش؟

Maya: The bear lives in a cave.

الدب يعيش في كهف.



Noha: Oh, so the cave is its home?

أوه، إذن الكهف هو منزله؟

Maya: Yes! That's called a shelter.

نعم! هذا ما يسمى بالمأوى.



Noha: Shelter? What's that?

مأوى؟ ما هذا؟

Maya: A shelter is a safe place where animals stay. It keeps them warm and dry.

المأوى هو مكان آمن تقيم فيه الحيوانات، فهو يبقيها دافئة وجافة.



Noha: I see! Why do animals need shelter?

فهمت! لماذا تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مأوى؟

Maya: To survive!

لينجوا!



Noha: Survive?

ينجو؟

Maya: That means to stay alive. Animals need food, water, and shelter to survive.

هذا يعني البقاء على قيد الحياة. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى الطعام والماء والمأوى للبقاء على قيد الحياة.



B Phonics Focus

The long and short "ow"



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

The letters "ow" can be tricky because they can sound different. Sometimes they are long, like in snow, and sometimes short, like in cow.

قد تكون حروف "ow" محيرة لأنها قد تُنطق بشكل مختلف. أحياناً تكون طويلة، كما في كلمة "snow"، وأحياناً قصيرة، كما في كلمة "cow".

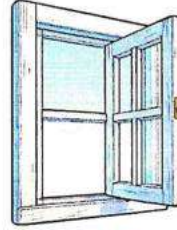
Long ow /oʊ/



snow
ثلج



grow
ينمو

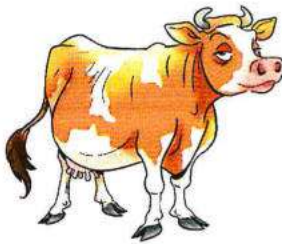


window
شباك



slow
بطء

Short ow /aʊ/



cow
بقرة



now
الآن



owl
بومة



brown
بني



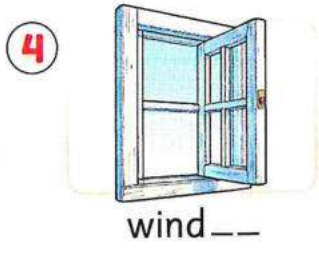
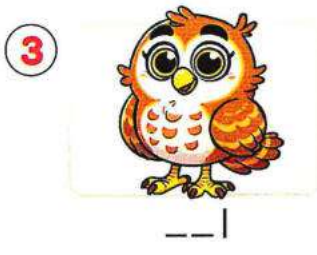
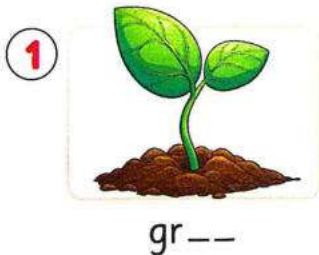
Checkpoint



Listen and write the missing letter(s):

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.



C Language in Use

Can and Cannot (can't)

Can

- We use "can" to talk about abilities.

– نستخدم كلمة "can" للتحدث عن القدرات.

e.g.



A bird **can** fly.

الطائر يستطيع أن يطير.

e.g.



A turtle **can** walk slowly.

السلحفاة تستطيع أن تمشي ببطء.

Can't

- We use **cannot** (can't) to talk about things you are not able to do.

– نستخدم cannot (can't) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي لا تستطيع القيام بها.

e.g.



A fish **cannot** fly.

السمة لا تستطيع أن تطير.

e.g.



A snake **can't** swim.

الثعبان لا يستطيع أن يسبح.



Note

When writing **cannot**, we often use the short form **can't** in writing and speaking.

عندما نكتب **cannot** فغالبًا نستخدم الصيغة المختصرة **can't** في الكتابة والحديث.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: _____

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى التأكد من فهم الطالب للقواعد.

- 1 A snake (**can** – **can't**) fly.
- 2 A bird (**can** – **can't**) swim.
- 3 A fish (**can** – **can't**) swim.
- 4 A tiger (**can** – **can't**) fly.

D Reading and Writing

Look and read: _____ انظر واقرأ:

The Helpful Owl

A little owl was worried. The storm was coming, and its nest was in a shaky tree. An old owl told him, "You can fly, little one. You can find a better shelter." The little owl flew away. He found a big cave and stayed safe inside. His ability to fly saved him.



MORAL

Use your abilities to stay safe and help others.

استخدم قدراتك لتبقى آمناً وتساعد الآخرين.

كان بوم صغير قلق. كانت العاصفة قادمة، وكان عشه في شجرة مهتزة. قالت له بومة عجوز: "يمكنك الطيران يا صغيري. يمكنك إيجاد مأوى أفضل." طار صغير البومة بعيداً. وجد كهفاً كبيراً وظل آمناً داخله. لقد أنقذته قدرته على الطيران.

Vocabulary

owl	بومة	storm	عاصفة
shaky	متزعزع	ability	قدرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
save	ينقذ	fly	يطير
stay	يبقى	find	يجد
	saved		flew
	stayed		found

✓ Checkpoint Read and complete: _____ اقرأ وأكمل:

(ability – worried – better)

- 1 A little owl was
- 2 You can find a shelter.
- 3 His to fly saved him.



Practice

on Lesson **3**

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____: استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 sn__

2 __ l

3 br__ n

4 c__

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A nest is a for birds.

a) safe

b) shelter

c) chair

2 Camels can in the desert.

a) survive

b) study

c) swim

3 Snakes through the grass.

a) jump

b) crawl

c) fly

4 Parrots from one tree to another.

a) survive

b) crawl

c) fly

5 Fish in rivers.

a) fly

b) swim

c) play

6 A kangaroo fly.

a) can

b) can't

c) is

7 A fish live on land.

a) can

b) can't

c) is



3 Read and complete with the words below: _____: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(fly – survive – swim)

Animals live in different ways. Some animals crawl on the ground, like snakes. Birds can ⁽¹⁾..... high in the sky. Fish can ⁽²⁾..... in the water. To survive, animals need food, water, and a safe shelter.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

This is Sara. She is eight years old. She can run fast, and she can swim in the pool. She can draw beautiful flowers, and she can sing songs. But she can't drive a car, and she can't fly like a bird. Sara is happy with the things she can do.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Sara can in the pool.
a) dive b) drive c) swim
- 2 Sara is happy with the things she do.
a) can b) can't c) didn't

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How old is Sara?
.....
- 4 What can't Sara do like a bird?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 does – it – Where – live?
.....
- 2 food – to – survive – need – Animals. SB
.....
- 3 little – fly – can't – owl – The. Super Question ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 the bear lives in a cave
.....
- 2 an elephant can't jump high
.....



Listen, point, and say: _____

استمع، أشر وقل: _____

We all share the Earth with animals. It is our job to respect them and their homes. We must not throw trash in the forest or the ocean. We can help by cleaning up and making sure animals have a safe place to live. When we protect nature, we help animals survive.



نتشارك جميعًا الأرض مع الحيوانات. من واجبنا احترامها واحترام منازلها. يجب ألا نرمى القمامة في الغابة أو المحيط. يمكننا المساعدة من خلال التنظيف والتأكد من أن الحيوانات لديها مكان آمن للعيش. عندما نحمل الطبيعة، نساعد الحيوانات على البقاء.

Main Vocabulary



nature

الطبيعة



protect

يحمي

Extra Vocabulary

share (v)

يشارك

respect (v)

يحترم

trash

قمامة

throw (v)

يلقي (يرمي)

clean up (v)

ينظف

make sure (v)

يتأكد



Checkpoint

Read and complete: _____

اقرأ وأكمل: _____

(survive – throw – share)

- ① We all the Earth with animals.
- ② We must not trash in the forest.
- ③ When we protect nature, we help animals

B Reading and Writing

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The Helping Hands



We can all help to protect nature and its animals. بإمكاننا جميعًا المساعدة في حماية الطبيعة وحيواناتها.

Lily and Bahaa went to the forest. They saw an old bird's nest on the ground. A little bird was crying. "Oh no, its home is broken," said Lily. Bahaa carefully put the nest back in a tree. They cleaned up the trash. They made the forest a cleaner place. The little bird was happy again.

ذهبت لي وبهاء إلى الغابة. رأيا عش طائر قديمًا على الأرض. كان طائرًا صغيرًا يبكي. قالت لي لي: "يا إلهي، بيته مكسور". أعاد بهاء العش بعناية إلى شجرة. نظفا القمامة. جعلوا الغابة مكانًا أنظف. عاد الطائر الصغير سعيدًا.



Checkpoint

Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

(trash – bird – went)

- 1 Lily and Bahaa to the forest.
- 2 A little was crying.
- 3 They cleaned up the



Practice

on Lesson

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 People must take care of _____ .

a) nature

b) nuts

c) night

2 When we protect nature, we help animals _____ .

a) study

b) surprise

c) survive

3 A cave can keep animals _____ from rain.

a) sad

b) happy

c) safe

4 We _____ up the trash.

a) respect

b) throw

c) clean

5 We must _____ our parents.

a) hate

b) respect

c) drink

6 I _____ my pencil when someone needs it.



a) share

b) respect

c) throw

2 Read and complete with the words below: _____ اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(respect – share – forest)

Shrook: We all _____ the Earth with animals.

Nour : We should _____ them.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

At school, we should always respect our teachers and friends. We can share our books, pencils, and toys with friends. When we respect and share, everyone feels happy and safe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

① At school, we should always our teachers and friends.
a) respect b) play c) run

② We can our books, pencils, and toys with friends.
a) write b) hide c) share

B Answer the following questions:

③ What can we share with our friends?

.....

④ How does everyone feel when we respect and share?

.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

① cleaned – trash – the – They – up.

.....

② to – It's – nature – keep – important – clean.

.....

③ animals – help – we – can – How?

.....

5 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

① why is it important to respect teachers

.....

② parents protect their children

.....

6 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب. 

“Protecting plants and animals”

(clean – respect – nature)

.....

.....

.....

Unit 5 Review

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى
تمكين الطالب من
مراجعة أهم الأجزاء
التي وردت في الوحدة.

Lesson (1)

habitat	موطن	ocean	محيط	wild	بري
desert	صحراء	forest	غابة	curious	فضول
fox	ثعلب	perfect	مثالي	dry	جاف
shade	ظل	special	خاص		

Lesson (2)

fur	فرو	feathers	ريش	hoof	حافر
paw	كف/قدم الحيوان	claws	مخالب	tail	ذيل

Lesson (3)

shelter	مأوى	survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	crawl	يزحف
fly	يطير	swim	يعوم		

Lesson (4)

nature	الطبيعة	protect	يحمي	share	يشارك
respect	يحترم	trash	قمامة	throw	يلقي (يرمي)
clean up	ينظف	make sure	يتأكد		

Phonics Focus

Long oo /u:/

moon قمر	zoo حديقة حيوان	pool حمام سباحة	food طعام
----------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------

Short oo /ʊ/

book كتاب	look ينظر	cook يطبخ	foot قدم
-----------	-----------	-----------	----------

Long ow /oʊ/

snow ثلج	grow ينمو	window شباك	slow ببطء
----------	-----------	-------------	-----------

Short ow /aʊ/

cow بقرة	now الآن	owl بومة	brown بني
----------	----------	----------	-----------

Language in Use

Adjectives are words that describe nouns (people, places, or things).

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء (الأشخاص، الأماكن، أو الأشياء).

e.g.



A **deep** ocean. محيط عميق.

لاحظ أن كلمة **deep** تصف المحيط.

e.g.



A **hot** desert. صحراء حارة.

لاحظ أن كلمة **hot** تصف الصحراء.

e.g.



A **wild** kangaroo. كنغر برى.

لاحظ أن كلمة **wild** تصف الكنغر.

e.g.



A **tall** tree. شجرة طويلة.

لاحظ أن كلمة **tall** تصف الشجر.

Can and Cannot (can't)

Can

• We use "**can**" to talk about abilities.

– نستخدم كلمة "**can**" للتحدث عن القدرات.

e.g.



A bird **can** fly.
الطائر يستطيع أن يطير.

e.g.



A turtle **can** walk slowly.

السحفاة تستطيع أن تمشى ببطء.

Can't

• We use **cannot** (**can't**) to talk about things you are not able to do.

– نستخدم **cannot** (**can't**) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي لا تستطيع القيام بها.

e.g.



A fish **cannot** fly.
السمة لا تستطيع أن تطير.

e.g.



A snake **can't** swim.
الثعبان لا يستطيع أن يسبح.



تهدف هذه الجزئية إلى
التأكد من إتقان الطالب
لأهم المفردات اللغوية
وفهمها باللغة العربية
والإنجليزية.



Read and write:

اقرأ واكتب:

الكلمة باللغة العربية

الكلمة باللغة الإنجليزية

Lesson (1)

habitat	.....	.....	محيط
desert	.....	.....	برى
forest	.....	.....	يطهى
zoo	.....	.....	فضولى
food	.....	.....	حمام سباحة
foot	.....	.....	كتاب
cook	.....	.....	ينظر
fox	.....	.....	ضخم
dry	.....	.....	مثالى
special	.....	.....	مياه مالحه

Lesson (2)

fur	.....	.....	ذيل
feathers	.....	.....	ذباب
hoof	.....	.....	عش
claws	.....	.....	حاد

Lesson (3)

shelter	.....	.....	يزحف
swim	.....	.....	يطير
cave	.....	.....	يبقى على قيد الحياة
snow	.....	.....	ينمو
cow	.....	.....	الآن
owl	.....	.....	شباك
storm	.....	.....	قلق
shaky	.....	.....	بنى

Lesson (4)

nature	.....	.....	ينظف
protect	.....	.....	يشارك
throw	.....	.....	يتأكد

Unit 5 Writing Corner



تتضمن هذه الصفحة
تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات الوحدة.

Golden tips for correct writing: نصائح ذهبية للكتابة الصحيحة:



Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Tip 1:

بداية الجملة تبدأ بحرف كبير
"Capital letter"

"Describe your favorite animal"

(soft – sleep – climb)

Tip 2:

ضع period (full stop)
في نهاية الجملة.

My favorite animal is the cat. It is small and soft. Cats like to sleep. They can climb trees easily.

Tip 3:

اكتب بخط مرتب وتأكد من كتابتك للكلمات بشكل
صحيح correct spelling.

Tip 4:

استخدم الكلمات المساعدة في كتابة جمل
صحيحة.

"Protecting animals and nature"

(cut – clean – save)

We must protect animals and nature. We should not cut trees. We must keep water clean. We should not hurt animals. We must save their homes.

"What animals can do"

(run – survive – fly)

Animals can do many things. Lions can run fast. Camels can survive in the hot desert. Elephants can carry heavy things. Birds can fly high.

Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Describe animals and their habitats"

(survive – desert – forest)

.....

.....

.....

.....



Student's Book Corner

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① A/An is a big area of salty water.
a) forest b) ocean c) desert
- ② A: Where do lizards live? B: They live in the
a) desert b) car c) school
- ③ A/An is a place with many trees.
a) desert b) ocean c) forest
- ④ A/An is where animals live.
a) wild b) habitat c) lizard
- ⑤ Birds have to help them fly.
a) claws b) fur c) feathers
- ⑥ A horse walks on a
a) paw b) hoof c) nest
- ⑦ A bird's home is a
a) cave b) nest c) tail

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(crawl – fly – survive – shelter – swim)

A turtle can ⁽¹⁾ in the water. A bird can ⁽²⁾ in the air. A snake can ⁽³⁾ on the ground. These abilities help animals ⁽⁴⁾ in their habitats.

3 Punctuate the following:
the fish can swim



Test yourself

30

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 _ _ l 2 f _ _ t 3 thr _ _ 4 wind _ _

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 3

- 1 A/An is a very hot and dry place.
a) desert b) forest c) ocean
- 2 A cat has a fluffy.....
a) hoof b) paw c) tail
- 3 A bird live in the sea.
a) can b) can't c) does
- 4 A snake crawl.
a) do b) can c) can't
- 5 A horse walks on a
a) paw b) hoof c) nest
- 6 Fish live in the desert.
a) can b) can't c) are

Reading

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 1

(special – forest – ocean)

The world has many places for animals. The desert is hot and sandy. The ⁽¹⁾ has many trees. The ⁽²⁾ is big and blue. Every animal has a special home called a habitat.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: 3



rotepct



wlo



rblown

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Some animals live in the forest, and some live in the desert. Elephants live in the forest and eat grass and leaves. Camels live in the desert and drink little water. Birds live in trees and eat seeds and insects. Each animal lives in the place that helps it survive.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Elephants eat in the forest.
a) meat b) fish c) grass and leaves
- 2 The word "survive" means to
a) live b) eat c) swim

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do birds eat?
.....
- 4 Why does each animal live in its place?
.....

Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 do – animals – shelter – Why – need?
.....
- 2 can – shelter – find – a better – You.
.....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 the little bird was happy
- 2 how can we help animals

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب.

"Animals"

(protect – clean – kind)

.....
.....



A. Language Functions



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Animals live in different (homes – habitats – houses).
- 2 Some animals live in the forest, some in the desert, and others in the (lake – pool – ocean).
- 3 All animals need shelter to survive in (nature – town – zoo).

B. Reading

2 Fill in the missing letters: املأ الحروف الناقصة:

8

1



_ _ l

2



cr _ _ l

3



m _ _ n

4



b _ a _ ches

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

8

- 1 We must (forget – play – protect) animals and nature.
- 2 Birds (can – can't – are) swim under the sea.
- 3 Horses have strong (hooves – paws – feathers).
- 4 My cat is soft and (heavy – hard – fluffy).

D. Writing

4 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

1 reem has a pet cat

2 where do camels live

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 8

1 protect — We — animals — should — wild.
.....

2 children — The — flowers — gathered.
.....

3 it — live — Where — does?
.....

4 a huge — blue — He — saw — ocean.
.....

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements: 6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“My favorite wild animal”

(meat — forest — strong)

.....
.....
.....

Story

Unit
6

The Honest Choice

الاختيار الصادق



Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- identify supporting details from a story read aloud.
- recall story events in the correct order after listening.
- identify the character who speaks in a story dialog read aloud.

يُحدّد التفاصيل الداعمة من قصة تُقرأ بصوت عالٍ.
يسترجع أحداث القصة بالترتيب الصحيح بعد الاستماع إليها.

يُحدّد الشخصية التي تتحدث في حوار ضمن القصة المقروءة بصوت عالٍ.

Speaking

- retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary.
- discuss key story elements (characters, setting, and events) using simple language.
- discuss the moral of the story.

يعيد سرد تسلسل الأحداث مستخدمًا المفردات المستهدفة.

يناقش عناصر القصة الأساسية (الشخصيات، المكان، والأحداث) باستخدام لغة بسيطة.

يناقش مغزى القصة.

Reading

- understand and define new vocabulary words in context.
- answer comprehension questions about the story.

يفهم ويُعرّف الكلمات الجديدة في سياقها.

يُجيب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالقصة.

Writing

- complete sentences using vocabulary from the story.
- write a paragraph about the story using target vocabulary words.

يُكمل الجمل باستخدام مفردات من القصة.

يكتب فقرة عن القصة مستخدمًا الكلمات المستهدفة.



Listen, point, and say: _____ استمع، أشر وقل:

Definitions



backpack

سَنْطَة ظَهْر

a bag for carrying books

حَقِيبة لحمل الكتب



nervous

قلقَة / متوترة

worried, not relaxed

قلق، غير مسترخٍ



whisper

يهمس

to speak very quietly

أن تتحدث بهدوء شديد



copy

تنسخ

to write the same thing

أن يعيد كتابة نفس الشيء



cheating

الغش

doing something dishonest

القيام بشيء غير صادق



truth

حقيقة / صدق

saying what is real and true

قَوْل ما هو حقيقي وصحيح



break

استراحة (الفسحة)

a stop for a short rest

توقّف لأخذ قسطٍ من الراحة



choice

اختيار

a decision you make

القرار الذي تتخذه

اقرأ ولاحظ: Read and notice:

Story Map خريطة القصة

Characters الشخصيات



Miss Salma أستاذة سلمى
(the teacher)
المعلمة



Lina لينا
(a student, 8 years old)
طالبة، عمرها ٨ سنوات



Nour نور
(Lina's classmate, 8 years old)
زميلة لينا في الفصل، عمرها ٨ سنوات

Setting المكان



The school
المدرسة

Definition

A moral: is a value you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.
الدرس الأخلاقي (العبرة): هي القيمة التي تتعلمها من قصة تقرأها أو من موقف في الحياة.

Moral of the Story الدرس المستفاد

Honesty is always the best choice, even when it is difficult.

الصدق هو دائما الخيار الأفضل، حتى عندما يكون الأمر صعبًا.

▶ Listen and read:



Lina and Nour were both in grade 3. One sunny morning, Lina looked at her backpack and **gasped**. "Oh no! I forgot to finish my math homework!" she thought. Her heart **beat** fast. She felt nervous. Miss Salma, the teacher, walked around the classroom. "Good morning, children! Please take out your math notebooks. I will collect them now," she said.

كانت لينا ونور في الصف الثالث. في صباح أحد الأيام المشمسة، نظرت لينا إلى حقيبة ظهرها وشهقت. "أوه لا! لقد نسيت إنهاء واجب الرياضيات! فكرت. كان قلبها ينبض بسرعة. شعرت بالتوتر. تجولت الأستاذة سلمى حول الفصل. "صباح الخير يا أطفال! برجاء إخراج كراسات الرياضيات الخاصة بكم. قالت: سأجمعهم الآن".

Keywords

gasped

شهقت

beat

نبض



Lina tried to finish her homework quickly, but she could not do it. Nour **leaned toward** her and **whispered**, "Don't worry, Lina. You can **copy** my homework. It is easy." Lina **shook** her head. "No, Nour. That is not **right**. I should tell the **truth**. **Cheating** is wrong." When Miss Salma came to Lina's desk, Lina took a **deep breath**. "I'm sorry, Miss Salma. I forgot to do my homework." Miss Salma smiled gently. "Thank you for telling the truth, Lina. You can finish your homework today and bring it tomorrow."

حاولت لينا إنهاء واجباتها المدرسية بسرعة، لكنها لم تستطع القيام بذلك. مالت نور نحوها وهمست: "لا تقلقي يا لينا. يمكنك نسخ واجبي. إنه سهل." هزت لينا رأسها. "لا يا نور. هذا ليس صحيحاً. ينبغي لي أن أقول الحقيقة. الغش خطأ." عندما جاءت الأستاذة سلمى إلى مكتب لينا، أخذت لينا نفساً عميقاً. "أنا آسفة يا أستاذة سلمى. لقد نسيت أن أقوم بواجبي". ابتسمت أستاذة سلمى وقالت "شكراً يا لينا على قولك للحقيقة. يمكنك الانتهاء من واجبك اليوم وإحضاره غداً".

Keywords

leaned toward

copy

right

cheating

مالت نحو

ينسخ

صحيح

الغش

whispered

shook

truth

deep breath

همست

هز

الحقيقة

نفس عميق



At break, Nour asked, "Weren't you **scared** to tell the truth?" Lina **noded**. "Yes, I was a little scared. But it feels better than copying someone else's work." Nour smiled. "I will try to be honest too, even when it is hard." From that day, Lina always tried to finish her homework on time. She also remembered that being honest is very important, even if it is not easy.

وفى الاستراحة سألت نور: "ألم تخافى أن تقول الحقيقة؟" لينا هزّت رأسها. "نعم، كنت خائفة قليلاً". لكن هذا يبدو أفضل من نسخ عمل شخص آخر. ابتسمت نور. "سأحاول أن أكون صادقة أيضاً، حتى عندما يكون الأمر صعباً". منذ ذلك اليوم، حاولت لينا دائماً إنهاء واجباتها المدرسية فى الوقت المحدد. وتذكرت أيضاً أن الصدق مهم جداً، حتى لو لم يكن الأمر سهلاً.

Keywords

scared

خائفة

noded

هزت رأسها



Practice

on Story

1



Listen and supply the missing letter(s): _____ استمع وأكمل الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1



bac _ pack

2



b _ eak

3



_ choice

4



ner _ ous

2

Read and complete the sentences with a word from the box: **SB**

اقرأ الجمل وأكملها باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

(copy – truth – homework – scared)

1

Lina forgot to do her

2

Nour told Lina, "You can my homework."

3

Lina said, "I should tell the"

4

Lina was a little to be honest.

3

Write (T) for True and (F) for False: **SB** — اكتب (T) إذا كان الجُملة صحيحة، و(F) إذا كانت الجملة غير صحيحة:

1

Lina copied Nour's homework.

2

Nour told the truth even it was difficult.

3

Miss Salma was angry with Lina.

4

Lina felt better after telling the truth.

4 Choose the correct answer: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① Lina and Nour were both in grade (3 – 4 – 5).
- ② Lina looked at her backpack and felt (happy – excited – nervous).
- ③ Nour asked Lina to (copy – watch – erase) her homework.
- ④ Honesty is always the best (meal – choice – car), even when it is difficult.

5 Reorder the words to form sentences: _____ أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً:

- ① heart – fast – Her – beat.

.....

- ② take out – your math – Please – homework.

.....

- ③ took – breath – Lina – a deep.

.....

- ④ should – the – I – truth – tell.

.....

- ⑤ was – scared – I – a little.

.....

6 Answer these questions in short sentences: **SB** _____ أجب عن هذه الأسئلة في جمل قصيرة:

- ① Who are the main characters in the story?

.....

- ② Where did the story take place?

.....

- ③ What did Nour want Lina to do?

.....

- ④ What lesson did Lina learn?

.....

Final Revision and Tests



- Revision on Each Unit
- General Practice on Each Unit
- Story Corner
- Conjugation of Verbs
- 15 Final Tests
- 5 Al-Azhar Tests
- Tapescripts
- Writing Answers
- Dictation Copybook

Revision on Unit 1

Vocabulary

dangerous	خطير	call for help	يطلب المساعدة
emergency	طوارئ	rules	قواعد
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	careful	حريص
floor	أرض	stop	قف
wait	ينتظر	safe	آمن
adult	بالغ	Don't touch!	لا تلمس!
cross	يعبر	street	شارع
safety	أمان	walk	يمشي
stranger	غريب	signs	علامات
hospital	مستشفى	protect	يحمي
carefully	بعناية	talk to	يتحدث مع
sick people	المرضى	scared	خائف
quickly	بسرعة	policeman	ضابط الشرطة
first aid	الإسعافات الأولية	both ways	في كلا الاتجاهين
seat belt	حزام الأمان	nodded	أولماً برأسه
fall	يسقط	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف
calm	هادئ	smoke	دخان
safety guide	دليل السلامة	stove	الموقد

Phonics Focus

"sl" /sl/	slide زلاجة (زحليقة)	sleep ينام	slow بطيء	slip ينزلق	
"st" /st/	stop توقف	step خطوة	star نجمة	stone حجر	stand يقف
"gr" /gr/	grab يمسك	grass حشائش	grow ينمو	green أخضر	
"tr" /tr/	trap فخ	train قطار	truck شاحنة	tree شجرة	trip رحلة

Language in Use

Imperatives

صيغ الأمر

Use:

We use imperatives to give safety rules or warnings.

نستخدم صيغ الأمر لإعطاء قواعد السلامة أو التحذير.

Positive instructions تعليمات إيجابية

مصدر الفعل (inf.)

e.g.



Stop! توقف!

e.g.



Be careful! كن حذرا!

Negative instructions تعليمات سلبية

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g.



Don't run! لا تجرى!

e.g.



Don't touch! لا تلمس!

• Modals for rules (must / mustn't):

- الأفعال الناقصة للقواعد (يجب / لا يجب):

We use "must" and "mustn't" to talk about rules. They tell us what we must do and what we mustn't do.

نستخدم "must" و "mustn't" للتحدث عن القواعد. فإنهما يحددان لنا ما يجب علينا فعله وما لا يجب علينا فعله.

must + (inf.) مصدر الفعل في المصدر.

mustn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل في المصدر.

e.g. You must wear a helmet when riding a bike.

يجب أن ترتدي خوذة عندما تركب دراجتك.

e.g. You mustn't run in the street.

يجب ألا تجرى في الشارع.

Punctuation Tips

• Exclamation point (!):

- علامات التعجب:

① After instructions that are very important.

- بعد التعليمات الهامة جدًا.

e.g. Stop! توقف!

Don't run! لا تركض!

② To show strong feelings like surprise, excitement, or warning.

- إظهار مشاعر قوية مثل المفاجأة أو الإثارة أو التحذير.

e.g. That's amazing! هذا رائع!

Watch out! كن حذرا!

General Practice on Unit (1)

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): ————— استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- A ① --ip ② --ass ③ --op ④ --ap
- B ① --ar ② --een ③ --ain ④ --ep

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① You must wear a in the car.
a) jacket b) cap c) seat belt
- ② We must for the green light.
a) wait b) shout c) eat
- ③ We wear a helmet when we ride a bike.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
- ④ Don't run on the road, it's
a) safe b) dangerous c) happy
- ⑤ You mustn't talk to a in the street.
a) friend b) stranger c) teacher
- ⑥ The car must at the red light.
a) go b) stop c) wait
- ⑦ You must look before crossing the road.
a) up b) both ways c) down
- ⑧ An ambulance comes quickly in a/an
a) game b) emergency c) park

3 Read and complete with the words below: ————— اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

A (teacher – helmet – hurt)

It was a sunny day at school. Lara was riding her bike at the playground. She wasn't wearing a (1)..... . She (2)..... her knee. Her teacher came and helped her.

B

(first aid – scared – ambulance)

Omar was playing football when he fell and broke his leg. It was an emergency. His friends were (1)..... and called for help. The teacher gave him (2)..... . Then, the ambulance arrived.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Lama was playing in her room. When she finished, she left a toy on the floor. Her mother said, "Don't leave the toy here. Someone may fall!" Lama listened to her mother and put the toy in the box. She followed the rules and was careful at home.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** Lama left the toy on the
a) table b) floor c) box
- 2** She followed the at home.
a) rules b) signs c) danger

B Answer the following questions:

- ④ Who told Lama not to leave the toy on the floor?

Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

- A ① a – stranger – talk – Don't – to.
- ② is – Amr – careful – home – at.
- ③ mustn't – run – You – near – the street.
- ④ helps – aid – First – people – injured.

B ① stove – touch – hot – the – Don't.

② the seat belt – in – the car – Wear.

③ us – safe – The policeman – keeps.

④ listen to – must – You – teacher – your.

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① we must be kind to our friends

② who helps children cross the street safely

③ my mother gave me first aid when I fell on the ground

④ you mustn't touch a hot cup

B ① mazen slipped on the stairs

② I look left and right before i cross the street

③ On sunday, I visit my grandmother

④ wearing a helmet keeps me safe

Revision on Unit 2

Vocabulary

food	طعام	water	ماء	sugar	سكر
meat	لحم	vegetables	خضراوات	eggs	بيض
cheese	جبين	nuts	مكسرات	full of	ممتلئ بـ
protein	بروتين	hydrated	يبقى مرويًا (مترطب)	bread	خبز
healthy food	طعام صحي	unhealthy food	طعام غير صحي	cake	كيك
lollipop	مصاصة	sweets	حلوى	teeth	أسنان
chips	بطاطس الشيبسي	salty	مالح	fries	بطاطس محمرة
cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)	pizza	بيتزا	cheese	جبنة
soda	صودا	carbohydrates	الكربوهيدرات	brain	مخ
fish	سمك	tasty	لذيذ	chicken	دجاج
milk	لبن	calcium	الكالسيوم	fats	الدهون
bones	العظام	rice	أرز	vitamins	فيتامينات
energy	طاقة	rest	يستريح	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
strong	قوى	fruits	فاكهة	exercise	يتدرب
sick	مريض	wash	يغسل	medicine	دواء
tired	مرهق	clean	ينظف	advice	نصيحة
yogurt	زبادي	soup	حساء (شورية)	honey	عسل
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	lunch	وجبة الغداء	dinner	وجبة العشاء
menu	قائمة الطعام	meal	وجبة	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Phonics Focus

ea /i:/	eat يأكل	meat لحم	beans فول	
ee /i:/	sweet حلو	see يرى	cheese جبنة	green اخضر

Language in Use

Reflexive Pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

Pronouns الضمائر

- I** → أنا
You → أنت/ أنتما
He → هو (مفرد مذكر)
She → هي
It → هو/ هي لغير العاقل
We → نحن
They → هم

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- myself**
yourself/ yourselves
himself
herself
itself
ourselves
themselves

Countable and Uncountable

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

We can count them (one, two, three...).

يمكننا عدّها (واحد، اثنان، ثلاثة، ...).

e.g. **two** eggs, **three** sandwiches,
five apples

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

We cannot count them individually.

لا يمكننا عدّها بشكل فردي.

e.g. **some** rice, **some** milk, **some** soup

General Practice on Unit (2)

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

- A ① m__t ② ch__se ③ s__ ④ sw__t
- B ① fr__s ② b__ns ③ gr__n ④ m__l

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: _____ اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① Apples and bananas are
a) sweets b) vegetables c) fruits
- ② I drink milk every morning.
a) a b) one c) some
- ③ I put a little honey in the
a) yogurt b) soup c) tea
- ④ Eating too much can make your teeth bad.
a) candy b) apple c) fish
- ⑤ Fish and chicken give us
a) carbohydrates b) sugar c) protein
- ⑥ Adam plays football by
a) himself b) herself c) itself
- ⑦ My favorite is an apple.
a) snake b) snack c) healthy
- ⑧ She drank water after playing.
a) some b) a c) an

3 Read and complete with the words below: _____ اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

A

(tasty – chicken – Lunch)

Yesterday, I ate lunch with my family. My mother cooked delicious food.
(1)..... is my favorite meal. I ate rice and (2)..... . Chicken is tasty and healthy.

B (protein – bones – brain)

Healthy food helps our bodies grow and stay strong. Milk and cheese are rich in calcium . They are good for our (1)..... . Eggs and meat are full of (2)..... which helps our brain grow.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

On a sunny morning, Lina went to the school garden. She saw many colorful flowers and butterflies flying around. She carefully **watered*** the plants and picked some apples from the tree. Lina enjoyed her time in the garden and felt very happy and excited to help the plants grow.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Lina went to the
a) playground b) school garden c) library
- 2 She saw many colorful in the garden.
a) cats b) flowers and butterflies c) cars

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Lina do to help the plants?
.....
- 4 How did Lina feel?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة:

- A
- 1 eat – must – We – food – healthy.
.....
 - 2 eat – I – 7 a.m. – breakfast – at.
.....
 - 3 keeps – Exercise – healthy – body – our.
.....
 - 4 food – does – Malek – healthy – eat – Why?
.....

* تروى

B ① food – healthy – has – The menu.

② medicine – The doctor – gave – me.

③ Maya – exercise – to – every day – likes.

④ must – You – take – of – yourself – care.

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① i put a little honey in my yogurt

② the baby wants a lollipop

③ are cake and soda healthy or unhealthy

④ What does farida eat for breakfast

B ① mostafa usually eats pizza and fries

② cookies are not healthy snacks

③ soda has too much sugar

④ i stay in bed when I am sick

Revision on Unit 3

Vocabulary

hero	بطل	smart	ذكي	medal	ميدالية
brave	شجاع	solve	يحل	firefighter	رجل إطفاء
strong	قوي	trouble	مشكلة	special	خاص
kind	طيب / عطوف	respect	يحترم	honor	شرف
hard times	أوقات صعبة	nice	جميل	helpful	متعاون
wear	يرتدي	rescue	ينقذ	swimmer	سباح
protect	يحمي	support	يدعم	inspire	يلهم
leader	قائد	courage	شجاعة	talent show	عرض المواهب
honest	أمين	lie	يكذب	truth	حقيقة
celebrate	يحتفل	encourage	يشجع	event	حدث
athlete	رياضي	put out	يطفى	fire alarm	إنذار الحريق
loudly	بصوت عالٍ	difficult	صعب	rang	رنّ
easily	بسهولة	fire truck	شاحنة إطفاء	spray	يرش
teach	يعلم	grateful	ممتن	afraid	خائف
village	قرية	flood	فيضان	poor families	أسر فقيرة
gold	ذهب	famous	مشهور	train	يتدرب
clap	يصفق	right away	فوراً	give up	يستسلم

Phonics Focus

Magic "e"	made	صنع	brave	شجاع	kite	طائرة ورقية	hope	أمل
	vase	زهريّة	name	اسم	sale	تخفيض		

Language in Use

Adverbs of Sequence ظروف الترتيب

Use "first" and "then" to show order.

استخدم "أولاً" و"ثم" لإظهار الترتيب.

First – what happens at the beginning

Then – what happens next

e.g. **First**, Omar trained hard.

e.g. **Then**, he climbed mountains.

أولاً، تدرب عمر بجد.

ثم تسلق الجبال.

General Practice on Unit (3)

Listening



Listen and write the missing letter(s): _____ **استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:**

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- A** ① brav_ ② kit_ ③ sal_ ④ nam_
- B** ① mad_ ② hop_ ③ vas_ ④ mak_

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1** A firefighter is a because he saves people.
a) job b) problem c) hero
- 2** The pilot wears awhen flying a plane.
a) helmet b) uniform c) team
- 3** The child was very when he spoke on the stage.
a) courage b) brave c) event
- 4** The nurse is very to sick children:
a) lazy b) courage c) helpful
- 5** The firefighter can people in danger.
a) wear b) solve c) rescue
- 6** A teacher's is to teach students.
a) job b) toy c) game
- 7** To try something hard without fear is
a) courage b) inspire c) support
- 8** First, I wash my hands, I eat.
a) than b) then c) thin

3 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

A (event – trains – athlete)

Hussein is my friend. He is a famous athlete. He (1)..... well and works hard every day, to get ready for the big (2)..... . He won a gold medal and his team was very happy.

B

(Good – inspire – support)

Salma is my sister. She is an honest leader. (1)..... leaders help their team. She gives (2)..... to her friends and helps them feel happy. Her ideas can inspire others to work hard and do good things.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nour helped many people during hard times. She always cared about others and wanted to make their lives better. First, she gave food and clothes to poor families so they could live happily. Then, she helped build hospitals to support sick people in need. Many Egyptians look up to her because she shows them how to be kind and strong. Her good heart and courage inspire everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 Nour gave clothes to the families.

a) poor

b) rich

c) big

2 She helped build to support sick people.

a) schools

b) supermarkets

c) hospitals

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Nour give the poor?

4 What does Nour show Egyptians by her actions?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

A 1 uniform – wear – a school – Children.

2 sprayed – He – water – the fire – on.

3 What – a hero – does – do?

4 trees – has – The village – many.

B ① Monday – is – The event – on.

② is – She – a – student – smart.

③ respect – our – parents – We – should.

④ truck – The – fast – moves – fire.

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① my father's job is a doctor

② when is the school event

③ first, he puts on his helmet

④ the kind girl helped her friend with homework

B ① i read a story last wednesday.

② we respect our teacher

③ the event is on Monday

④ who is your favorite athlete

Revision on Unit 4

Vocabulary

computer	حاسب آلي (كمبيوتر)	TV	تلفاز	technology	التكنولوجيا
tablet	جهاز لوحى	phone	هاتف	devices	الأجهزة
robot	إنسان آلي	remind	يتذكر	think	يفكر
search	يبحث	online	عبر الإنترنت	information	معلومات
email	البريد الإلكتروني	forget	ينسى	internet	الإنترنت
send	يرسل	download	تحميل	camera	كاميرا
message	رسالة	apps	تطبيقات	turn on	يشغل
understand	يفهم	programs	برامج	smart home	المنزل الذكي
screen	شاشة	virus	فيروس	press	يضغط
keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح	power button	زر التشغيل	password	كلمة السر
protect	يحمى	secret	سر	account	حساب
fast	سريع	harmful program	برنامج ضار	damage	يضر
unlock	يفتح	private	خاص	get into	يدخل إلى
share	يشارك	fix the problem	يصلح المشكلة	drone	طائرة بدون طيار
warm	يدفئ	amazing	مذهل		

Phonics Focus

"er"	teacher مُعلم / مُعلمة	computer حاسب آلي (كمبيوتر)	player لاعب	letter خطاب	father أب
"ar"	car سيارة	star نجمة	park حديقة عامة	guitar جيتار	farm مزرعة
"or"	corn ذرة	horn قرن	fork شوكة	short قصير	storm عاصفة

Language in Use

Conjunctions

الروابط

and

To express addition

يعبر عن الإضافة

e.g. I like apples **and** oranges.
أحب التفاح والبرتقال.

but

To show contrast

يظهر الاختلاف

e.g. I like pizza, **but** I don't like burgers.
أحب البيتزا، لكنني لا أحب البرجر.

or

To give a choice

يعطى خيارًا

e.g. Would you like an apple **or** an orange?
هل تريد تفاحة أم برتقالة؟

The Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Use:

• يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن شيء سوف تفعله / لن تفعله في المستقبل.

Form:

التكوين :

Affirmative Form

صيغة الإثبات

will + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.

e.g. I **will play** games after school.

سوف أَلعب ألعابًا بعد المدرسة.

e.g. I **will visit** my grandparents next week.

سوف أزور أجدادي الأسبوع القادم.

Negative Form

صيغة النفي

will not + (inf.) مصدر الفعل.

e.g. I **won't share** my password.

أنا لن أشارك كلمة المرور الخاصة بي.

e.g. I **won't forget** to make a strong password.

لن أنسى أن أعمل كلمة سر قوية.

General Practice on Unit (4)

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): ————— استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📢

- A ① play — ② st — ③ h — n ④ sh — t
- B ① st — m ② guit — ③ f — k ④ teach —

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① You must keep your secret.
a) screen b) password c) keyboard
- ② Ali play outside because it's raining.
a) won't b) will c) is
- ③ I type on the to write words.
a) keyboard b) screen c) book
- ④ People use a to take pictures from the sky.
a) virus b) computer c) drone
- ⑤ Press the to start the game.
a) keyboard b) virus c) button
- ⑥ I use my tablet to for information.
a) play b) search c) sleep
- ⑦ It is not good to look at the for a long time.
a) button b) screen c) keyboard
- ⑧ Do you want tea coffee?
a) and b) or c) but

3 Read and complete with the words below: ————— اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(screen – virus – download)

Technology is very important in our life. I always play with my computer after school. On the big screen, I play games and watch videos. Sometimes I new apps. I must be careful because a (2) can harm my computer.

B**(camera – apps – robot)**

Technology helps us in many ways. At home, we watch our favorite shows on the TV. My brother has a (1)..... that cleans the floor. I use my (2)..... to take nice photos. On my tablet, I have many fun apps to play and learn.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Many children like playing computer games, but there are some problems. If children play for many hours, it can harm their eyes and make them tired. Looking at the screen for too long is not healthy. Some children forget to do homework or spend less time with their family and friends. Downloading games from the internet can also bring a virus to the computer. Children should play for a short time and also do other activities.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Playing computer games for many hours canthe eyes.
a) harm b) help c) make stronger
- 2 Looking at the screen for too long is
a) healthy b) fun c) not healthy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do children forget when they play too much?
.....
- 4 How can downloading games harm your computer?
.....

Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

A 1 many – has – apps – My tablet.

2 you – like – Do – robots – computers – or?

3 keyboard – type – They – the – on.

4 friend – writes – He – his – to – emails.

B ① loves – Ola – technology.

② smart – our – I – home – love.

③ my – I – won't – share – password.

④ play – won't – games – Nada – night – at.

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① omneya won't press the button

② a robot helps clean floors

③ i like books and stories

④ would you like candy or chocolate

B ① a virus can harm your computer

② they take photos with their camera

③ i download games on my tablet

④ do you want juice or milk

Revision on Unit 5

Vocabulary

habitat	موطن	ocean	محيط	wild	بري
nature	طبيعة	special	مميز	desert	صحراء
world	عالم	curious	فضولي	forest	غابة
sandy	رملي	owned	ملك لـ ...	discover	يكتشف
cool	بارد	fly	يطير	fur	فرو
paw	كف/قدم الحيوان	sharp	حاد	feathers	ريش
claws	مخالب	hooves	حوافر	tail	ذيل
push away	يدفع بعيداً	nest	عش	furry	فروى
bushy	كثيف	branches	فروع	crawl	يزحف
cozy	مريح	respect	يحترم	protect	يحمي
share	يشارك	shelter	ملجأ / مأوى	flew away	طار بعيداً
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	gather	يجمع		

Phonics Focus

Long oo /u:/	moon قمر	zoo حديقة الحيوانات	pool حمام سباحة	food طعام
Short oo /ʊ/	book كتاب	look ينظر	cook يطبخ	foot قدم
Long ow /oʊ/	snow ثلج	grow ينمو	window شباك	slow بطيء
Short ow /aʊ/	cow بقرة	now الآن	owl بومة	brown بني

Language in Use

Adjectives

الصفات

Adjectives are words that describe nouns (people, places, or things).

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء (الأشخاص أو الأماكن أو الأشياء).

e.g. A **hot** desert. صحراء حارة.

لاحظ أن كلمة **hot** تصف الصحراء.

e.g. A **deep** ocean. محيط عميق.

لاحظ أن كلمة **deep** تصف المحيط.

A **wild** kangaroo. كنجري بري.

لاحظ أن كلمة **wild** تصف الكنجري.

A **tall** forest. غابة طويلة.

لاحظ أن كلمة **tall** تصف الشجرة.

Can & Cannot (can't)

- We use "can" to talk about abilities. - نستخدم كلمة "can" للحديث عن القدرات.

e.g. A bird **can** fly.

الطائر يستطيع أن يطير.

- We use **cannot** "can't" to talk about things you are not able to do.

- نستخدم **cannot** "can't" (لا يمكن) للحديث عن الأشياء التي لا نستطيع القيام بها.

e.g. A fish cannot (**can't**) fly.

السمكة لا تستطيع أن تطير.

General Practice on Unit (5)

Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): ————— استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

- | | | | | |
|---|-------|-------|---------|-------|
| A | ① c— | ② f—d | ③ wind— | ④ l—k |
| B | ① f—t | ② —l | ③ sn— | ④ m—n |

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: ————— اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① The camel lives in the
 a) forest b) ocean c) desert
- ② A lion is a animal.
 a) wild b) sandy c) cute
- ③ A bird builds its in a tree.
 a) paw b) hoof c) nest
- ④ Kangaroos swim.
 a) can b) can't c) must
- ⑤ A horse has a
 a) hoof b) paw c) feather
- ⑥ A parrot has colorful
 a) paws b) feathers c) hooves
- ⑦ Children are often and ask many questions.
 a) curious b) shady c) sandy
- ⑧ A is a place where animals live.
 a) hospital b) house c) habitat

3 Read and complete with the words below: ————— اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

A (forest – discover – ocean)

The world is full of amazing places where animals live. Each animal has a special home. Some animals live in the (1)..... and others live in the desert. Many fish and whales swim in the (2)..... . People want to discover more about animals and plants.

B

(safe – tail – flies)

Many animals have special body parts. A horse has hooves on its feet. It has a (1)..... to push away (2)..... Their body parts help them to stay safe in their habitats.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ : اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Lions are wild animals. They live in the forest and the grasslands. A lion has sharp teeth and strong legs to **hunt*** other animals. It has a loud voice that can be heard from far away.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** A lion has a voice.
a) loud b) cute c) quiet
- 2** Lions are animals.
a) wild b) desert c) weak

B Answer the following questions:

- ③ Where do lions live?
-
- ④ What does a lion use its teeth and legs for?

Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: ————— أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

- A ① food – to – survive – need – Animals.

- ② ground – A snake – crawl – can – the – on.

- ③ animals – can – What – do?

- ④ forest – animals – the – Many – in – live.

B ① horse – a – hoof – strong – has – A.

② does – giraffe – the – Where – live?

③ can – swim – Whales – fast.

④ fast – baby – The – crawl – can.

6 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

A ① where does the lion live

② the camel lives in the desert

③ can birds swim in the ocean

④ the giraffe has a long neck

B ① we should take care of nature

② the elephant is a big animal

③ when can we see owls

④ monkeys climb trees

The Honest Choice

Vocabulary

backpack	حقيبة ظهر	homework	الواجب المنزلي
leaned	انحنى	easy	سهل
nervous	عصبي	worried	قلق
relaxed	مسترخٍ	whisper	همس
quietly	بهدوء	copy	ينسخ
cheat	يغش	dishonest	غير أمين
truth	الحقيقة	true	صحيح
scared	خائف	nod	يوميء برأسه
on time	في الوقت المحدد	break	استراحة / فسحة
finish	ينهى	choice	خيار
decision	قرار	classmate	زميل الدراسة
gaped	شهقت	take out	يخرج
gently	بلطف	shook her head	هزت رأسها
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	deep breath	نفس عميق
beat	ينبض	scared	خائفة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Lina forgot her
 a) notebook b) homework c) lunch
- 2 Lina was when she realized she forgot her homework.
 a) happy b) nervous c) easy
- 3 Miss Salma asked the children to take out their
 a) books b) pencils c) math notebooks
- 4 Nour told Lina she could her homework.
 a) copy b) throw c) write
- 5 Lina felt better after the truth.
 a) forgetting b) hiding c) telling
- 6 From that day, Lina tried to her homework on time.
 a) lose b) finish c) hide
- 7 The moral of the story is ".....".
 a) Study hard every day b) Honesty is the best choice
 c) Always play with friends
- 8 Miss Salma told Lina she could finish her homework
 a) yesterday b) next year c) today

Super Question ?

2 Read and complete with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(copy – truth – homework – scared)

- 1 Lina forgot to do her
- 2 Nour told Lina, "You can my work."
- 3 Lina said, "I should tell the"
- 4 Lina was a little to be honest.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: ——— أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

① scared – felt – nervous – Lina – and.

② homework – forgot – her – to do – Lina.

③ math – Miss Salma – the – notebooks – collected.

④ always – honest – important – Being – is.

4 Write (T) for True and (F) for False: ——— اكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة:

① Nour told Lina to tell the truth. ()

② Lina copied Nour's homework. ()

③ Miss Salma was angry with Lina. ()

④ Lina decided to always finish her homework on time. ()

⑤ Lina told Miss Salma the truth. ()

⑥ Lina felt better after telling the truth. ()

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered	save	ينقذ	saved
call	يتصل	called	stop	يقف	stopped
turn off	يغلق	turned off	search	يبحث	searched
check	يفحص	checked	protect	يحمي	protected
nod (يومي برأسه) يهز رأسه تعبيراً عن الموافقة		noded	help	يساعد	helped
talk	يتحدث	talked	want	يريد	wanted
walk	يمشي	walked	respect	يحترم	respected
listen	يستمع	listened	train	يتدرب	trained
rest	يستريح	rested	practice	يمارس	practiced
exercise	يتدرب	exercised	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
learn	يتعلم	learned	clap	يصفق	clapped
love	يحب	loved	smile	يتسم	smiled
follow	يتبع	followed	realize	يدرك	realized
encourage	يشجّع	encouraged	use	يستخدم	used
solve	يحل	solved	climb	يتسلق	climbed
fill	يملأ	filled	gather	يجمع	gathered
spray	يرش	sprayed			

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

(be) is - are

يكون

was - were

speak

يتحدث

spoke

leave

يغادر

left

hold

يمسك

held

stand

يقف

stood

lose

يضيع / يتوه

lost

see

يرى

saw

give

يعطى

gave

make sure

يتأكد

made sure

build

يبني

built

do

يفعل

did

run

يجرى

ran

feel

يشعر

felt

win

يفوز

won

go

يذهب

went

get ready

يستعد

got ready

put on

يرتدى

put on

give up

يستسلم

gave up

ring

يرن

rang

fly

يطير

flew

drive

يقود

drove

find

يجد

found

Final Tests

Test

1

30

(A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 m__n

2 __eep

3 mad__

4 teach__

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

1 I like tablets, I don't like computers.

a) and

b) or

c) but

2 Children must before crossing the street.

a) sing

b) wait

c) play

3 I eat rice and chicken for

a) breakfast

b) lunch

c) dinner

4 She taught to play the guitar.

a) myself

b) herself

c) himself

5 My parents told me not to talk to a

a) teacher

b) friend

c) stranger

6 I can make a sandwich by

a) ourselves

b) myself

c) herself

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

1

(study – virus – screen)

Using computers too much can be harmful. It can harm our eyes when we look at the (1) for many hours. Children may forget to (2) or play outside. Some games also bring a virus to the computer.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

3

1



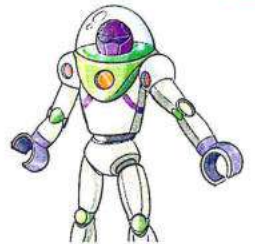
khnicec

2



oehr

3



otorb

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Ahmed is a famous athlete. He is very strong and trains every day. He runs and swims to stay healthy. Ahmed is **brave** and never gives up. He helps his classmates and friends practice sports too. He won a medal in a big competition.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) staying healthy b) unhealthy food c) competition
- 2 The word **brave** means
 a) practice b) sports c) courage

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Ahmed do to stay healthy?
- 4 What did Ahmed win in the competition?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 carefully – Doctors – their – jobs – do.
- 2 exercise – to keep – healthy – I – my body.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 how can I stay safe
- 2 sara looked at the restaurant menu

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 7

“My teacher”

(kind – support – inspire)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): —: أستمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

1 __ass

2 st__m

3 gr__

4 m__l

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: —: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 3

1 We press the power to turn on the computer.
a) button b) keyboard c) screen

2 Be careful! Don't hurt
a) himself b) yourself c) myself

3 Animals need food and water to
a) survive b) sleep c) hide

4 The children can dress
a) yourself b) themselves c) himself

5 She used her to call her mother.
a) phone b) ruler c) notebook

6 You call for help in an emergency.
a) aren't b) must c) mustn't

3 Read and complete with the words below: —: اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 1

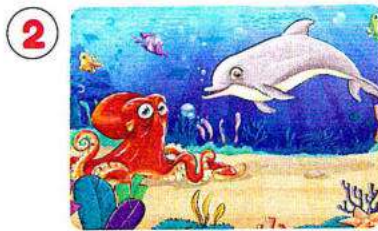
(stranger – safety – emergency)

Being safe is very important. Mona always wears a helmet when she rides her bike. She knows safety rules are important. If a (1)..... comes near, she stays away. In an (2)....., she calls her parents.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: —: انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة: 3



camaer



ocane



labuncame

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Three friends — Ali, Sara, and Omar — were at the park playing. They ran, jumped, and laughed together. Ali brought a ball, and they played football. Sara and Omar took turns on the swings. They felt happy and enjoyed the sunny day. After playing, they sat under a tree and drank water to stay safe and healthy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 Ali brought a to play football.

a) ball

b) book

c) kite

2 After playing, they sat a tree.

a) under

b) on

c) behind

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who went to the park?

4 How did the friends feel while playing?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

1 A habitat — is — live — animals — where.

2 must — We — trash — not — throw.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

1 how can we help animals

2 the little bird was flying

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“My favorite athlete”

(healthy — exercise — medal)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📢

1

__uck

2

ch__se

3

__ep

4

farm__

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 3

1

I drink a glass of to be healthy.

a) coffee

b) soda

c) milk

2

A is a place where animals stay.

a) shelter

b) school

c) house

3

We should always take care of

a) yourself

b) ourselves

c) myself

4

Children play with fire.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) can

5

Birds fly in the sky.

a) can

b) can't

c) are

6

It is to climb a tall tree alone.

a) fun

b) dangerous

c) healthy

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 1

(gather – bushy – swim)

Animals can do many different things. Birds can fly high in the sky. Fish can (1)..... fast in the water. Monkeys (2)..... food from the trees. The fox has a bushy tail that helps it stay warm.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: 3

1



tsop

2



ieoksc

3



Ittahee

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Eating healthy food is very important. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins and energy. Milk and cheese help our bones grow strong. Fish, eggs, and chicken give us protein. We should also drink plenty of water. Eating too much sugar or **fast food** is not healthy. Healthy food helps us stay strong, feel good, and have energy to play and study.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The word **fast food** means food like
a) fries b) chicken c) vitamins and energy
- 2 The main idea of the text is about the importance of
a) eating healthy food b) tasting food c) fish and eggs

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does healthy food help us?
- 4 Which foods help our bones grow strong?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 in — Snakes — the grass — quietly — crawl.
- 2 follow — do — we — Why — the — rules?

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 nuts give us energy and vitamins
- 2 what do you like to eat

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“My healthy breakfast”
(milk — egg — nuts)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 b__k

2 sn__

3 __ip

4 st__

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

1 Birds build a to keep their eggs safe.

a) knife

b) nest

c) menu

2 Fish walk on land.

a) can

b) can't

c) must

3 I do my homework tonight.

a) is

b) does

c) will

4 You need to eat well to stay

a) sick

b) strong

c) sleepy

5 Animals must find food and water to

a) survive

b) sleep

c) hide

6 Can I have some?

a) water

b) banana

c) apple

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(uniform – rescue – helpful)

Some people work to keep us safe. Police officers wear a (1)..... when they go to work. They are very (2)..... and always ready to rescue people in danger.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3

1



alwk

2



aldme

3



ufr

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Omar wears his school uniform every day. He puts his books and pencils in his **backpack** before leaving home. His mother always tells him to be honest and finish his homework on time. Omar goes to school early and listens carefully to his teacher. He feels proud when his teacher says he is helpful and smart.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 A backpack is a
a) lunchbox b) bag c) desk
- 2 His mother tells him to be
a) noisy b) honest c) angry

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Omar wear every day?
- 4 When does Omar feel proud?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 tail – a – furry – has – The cat.
- 2 salad – dinner – had – for – We.

7 Punctuate the following: — ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 where is the hospital
- 2 my mother is cooking dinner

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 7

“On the road”
(street – cross – safe)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

__ab

2

__ain

3

__t

4

s__

(B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

1

Running near the road is

a) dangerous

b) virus

c) safe

2

Eating fruits and vegetables keeps us

a) unhealthy

b) bad

c) healthy

3

A snake swim.

a) is

b) can't

c) can

4

They watch TV because their parents said no.

a) will

b) won't

c) is

5

Call 122 if there is an

a) emergency

b) picnic

c) celebration

6

..... he woke up early. Then, he brushed his teeth.

a) First

b) Next

c) Finally

3

Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(breakfast – exercise – medicine)

Being healthy is very important. To stay healthy, we must eat good food every day. A strong start in the morning begins with a good (1)..... . We should also do (2)..... to keep our bodies fit. When we are sick, the doctor gives us medicine to help us get better.

4

Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3

1



lures

2



oodf

3



ousp

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Mona was sick, so her father took her to the **hospital**. The doctor gave her some medicine to make her healthy again. The doctor also told her to eat more vegetables and drink water. She followed the doctor's advice and took care of herself.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The word "hospital" means a place where people go.
a) healthy b) medicine c) sick
- 2 The doctor told Mona to eat
a) fries b) vegetables c) cakes

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who took Mona to the hospital?
- 4 What did Mona follow?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 weak – is – The swimmer.
- 2 is – calcium – rich – Yogurt – in.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 why should we wear helmets
- 2 the dog is running fast in the garden

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Eating healthy"

(vegetables – breakfast – strong)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

gr__n

2

p__k

3

br_v_

4

n__

(B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

1

Good friends always each other.

a) support

b) virus

c) shelter

2

I eat pasta chicken.

a) or

b) and

c) but

3

Sara eat fast food because it's not healthy.

a) will

b) won't

c) is

4

People use a to take pictures from the sky.

a) pen

b) chair

c) drone

5

Nada is very and always helps her friends.

a) helpful

b) lazy

c) rude

6

He wanted to go outside it was raining.

a) but

b) and

c) or

3

Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(eggs – breakfast – milk)

Ahmed : What do you usually eat for?

Mohamed: I usually eat

4

Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3

1



eldera

2



usnt

3



ertsed

5 Read the text and answer the questions: _____ اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali and his family went to the forest. They built a small **shelter** near the trees to stay safe at night. Ali said, "We must be careful because there can be danger like wild animals." At night, they made a fire and cooked soup. They enjoyed the stars in the sky.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

① A shelter is a kind of

- a) forest b) home c) school

② The general idea of the text is about a to the forest.

- a) house b) trip c) shop

B Answer the following questions:

③ What food did they cook?

④ What danger can be in the forest?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

① claws – sharp – The tiger – has.

② email – I – an – today – send.

7 Punctuate the following: _____ ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

① why do you take medicine

② omar is a strong athlete

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“Technology at home”

(phone – computer – internet)

(A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 I__k

2 wind__

3 __l

4 __op

(B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

1 I like to eat yogurt with

a) honey

b) salt

c) water

2 She bought milk.

a) a

b) an

c) some

3 First, he put on the uniform. he went to school.

a) But

b) Then

c) Or

4 Eating too much candy is

a) good

b) healthy

c) unhealthy

5 The firefighter was very during the fire.

a) brave

b) big

c) lazy

6 She looked at in the mirror.

a) herself

b) himself

c) themselves

3

Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

1

(doctor – job – help)

Nour : What is your

Salma : I'm a

4

Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

3

1



tablesvege

2



terwa

3



koob

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

A little bird built a small nest in the tree. It wanted a safe habitat for its babies. One day, a cat came close, but the bird was brave and protected them. The babies stayed safe with their mother. Later, the babies grew strong and learned to fly.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 The bird built its nest in the

a) tree

b) house

c) school

2 A came near the nest.

a) cat

b) dog

c) boy

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did the bird build a nest?

4 What happened when the babies grew?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 1

1 fly – can – high – The parrot.

2 snacks – Nuts – healthy – are.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

1 where is the nearest hospital

2 we can eat cookies with milk

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“In the forest”

(trees – shelter – survive)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

① p__l

② __ar

③ c__

④ b__ns

(B) Reading

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

① I made a healthy for today.

a) exercise

b) menu

c) knife

② We can find information on the

a) shelter

b) internet

c) medicine

③ The cat cleans

a) myself

b) itself

c) yourself

④ You wash your hands before eating.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) shouldn't

⑤ Always wear your in the car.

a) seat belt

b) backpack

c) helmet

⑥ I climbed the ladder by

a) myself

b) yourself

c) itself

③ Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(famous – Feryal Ashraf – team)

Karim : Who is

Ahmed : She is a Egyptian athlete.

④ Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3



ooz



oonm



ookl

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

The Egyptian athlete trained hard every day to win the gold medal. When she finished the race, everyone clapped and cheered for her. She was famous for her hard work and never giving up, even when the race was very hard.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about an athlete.
a) Indian b) Italian c) Egyptian
- 2 She hard every day.
a) slept b) trained c) played

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why was she famous?
- 4 What did she want to win?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 tail – long – a – has – The monkey.
- 2 a computer – have – I – and – a tablet.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 what do we need to stay safe
- 2 the cat is sleeping quietly

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“My hero”

(brave – rescue – helpful)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب. 📌

1 sw__t

2 guit__

3 s__

4 st_n__

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 3

1 Students wear a school

a) smart

b) virus

c) uniform

2 Eating too much fast food can be

a) unhealthy

b) healthy

c) pizza

3 I want an apple a banana.

a) and

b) but

c) but

4 You use your phone while driving.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) can

5 It is important to be and tell the truth.

a) honest

b) bad

c) sad

6 They did the homework by

a) themselves

b) yourself

c) himself

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 1

(robots – computers – smart)

Malek: Do you like or robots?

Moaz: I like

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: 3

1



irefs

2



inkd

3



onpeh

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

My name is Ali. I went with my family to a **restaurant** on Friday. The **waiter*** gave us the menu and smiled. I ordered chicken and vegetables, but my brother chose fries. My father said, "Too many fries are unhealthy and not good for you." We all drank orange juice, laughed, and enjoyed our dinner together.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 A restaurant is a place where people go to

- a) play b) eat c) swim

2 The waiter gave us the

- a) menu b) toys c) books

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Ali order in the restaurant?

4 What did the family drink?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

1 is — The soup — tasty — very.

2 The helmet — head — your — protects.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

1 do you wash your hands

2 i brush my teeth every morning

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Using technology every day"

(apps — search — internet)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

6

- 1 play__ 2 sh__t 3 v_s_ 4 __ap

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

- 1 Birds have soft, colorful
a) hooves b) claws c) feathers
- 2 Doctors give us when we are sick.
a) medicine b) uniform c) photo
- 3 Do you want pasta rice?
a) but b) or c) and
- 4 He eat the cake because he is hungry.
a) shouldn't b) will c) won't
- 5 I use a to do my homework.
a) computer b) chair c) backpack
- 6 I want an
a) apple b) water c) sugar

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

1

(animals – survive – habitat)

Khaled: What is a

Amr : It is a place where live.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

3



scuere



ofho



recsha

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

The swimmer was very brave and had courage in the water. She was smart and swam safely. She liked caring about others and helped her friends. She taught her friends how to swim safely. Her friends felt happy and she encouraged them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The swimmer was very
a) scared b) brave c) lazy
- 2 She had in the water.
a) courage b) candy c) sleep

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did she swim?
- 4 How did her friends feel?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 night – at – flies – The owl.
- 2 cookies – chocolate – likes – She.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 how can we protect animals
- 2 my father drives to work every Thursday

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“At the hospital”

(doctor – medicine – help)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1 s _ l _

2 lett _ _

3 c _ _

4 _ _ ide

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 3

1 A good friend is always

a) true

b) safe

c) helpful

2 I like milk, I don't like yogurt.

a) or

b) and

c) but

3 You talk to strangers.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) will

4 gives us protein.

a) Sugar

b) Candy

c) Meat

5 The can clean the floor by itself.

a) robot

b) cat

c) car

6 He ate two for breakfast.

a) eggs

b) juice

c) sugar

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: 1

(emergency – seat belt – rules)

Safety is very important for everyone. Some things can be dangerous, so we must follow the (1)..... . Always wear a (2)..... in the car. In an emergency, call an ambulance to help quickly.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: 3



dliw



roedn



incpolema

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

One day, a car stopped in the street. There was an **accident***. It was an emergency, so people called for help. A man said, "Be careful when you cross the road!" Soon, an **ambulance** came to rescue the people. We must always follow the rules to stay safe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 An "**ambulance**" is a special car that helps people who are very
a) safe b) sick c) brave
- 2 We must follow the to stay safe.
a) rules b) ambulance c) danger

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the man say to the people?
- 4 Who came to rescue the people?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 1

- 1 using – internet – is – She – the.
- 2 boy – scared – looks – The.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 where is the fire truck
- 2 i live in a small village

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

(protein – bones – energy)

.....

.....

.....

* حادثة.

(A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

__ow

2

__ip

3

m__t

4

c__n

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

1 We play football after school because it is raining.

a) will

b) won't

c) are

2 Ali will go to the park play football with his friends.

a) and

b) but

c) or

3 Children enjoy playing on the computer.

a) knife

b) exercise

c) games

4 Wear a seat belt to stay in the car.

a) angry

b) cool

c) safe

5 We visit our grandparents this weekend.

a) will

b) won't

c) are

6 Never share your with anyone.

a) password

b) toy

c) snack

3 Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

1

(snack – dinner – lunch)

Eating healthy meals every day is important. I eat breakfast every morning. At school, I have (1)..... with my friends. After school, I eat a small (2)..... like an apple before doing my homework. In the evening, my family enjoys dinner together.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة:

3

1



ugars

2



esamg

3



estfor

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Every morning, Yasser exercises in the park. He runs and plays football with his friends. Yasser also likes swimming because it keeps his body healthy. He loves playing sports because it makes him happy and full of energy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1 The main idea of the text is about

- a) the park b) Yasser c) football

2 Exercise makes you

- a) tired b) strong c) nervous

B Answer the following questions:

3 What sport does Yasser play with his friends?

4 Why does Yasser love sports?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 1

1 about – learned – We – floods.

2 clean – my – I – room – every day.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

1 why do we follow rules

2 a drone flies in the sky

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“The firefighter”

(uniform – strong – danger)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

① f__t

② tr__

③ f__k

④ br__n

(B) Reading

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

① We made healthy snacks by

a) ourselves

b) himself

c) myself

② Food cooked in oil has too much

a) calcium

b) vitamins

c) fat

③ You listen carefully to the teacher.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) can

④ We must our hands before we eat.

a) wash

b) play

c) rest

⑤ Friends should always each other.

a) support

b) ignore

c) fight

⑥ We need rice.

a) some

b) a

c) an

③ Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(shelter – survive – danger)

All animals need a safe place. Many animals live in the forest where they can find food and water. To (1), they need a safe place to sleep, so they build a (2)..... . They must always be careful because there is danger from bigger animals.

④ Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3



1

oscrs

2



team

3



oopl

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Sara saw a dog in the street. The dog was scared and hurt its paw. Sara was very helpful and gave the dog some water. Then, she asked her father to protect the dog and take it home. Sara felt happy because she **saved** the animal.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The word **saved** means
a) rescue b) hurt c) eat
- 2 Sara asked her to take the dog home.
a) mother b) father c) brother

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Sara give the dog?
- 4 How did Sara feel at the end?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 strong — The man — looks — very.
- 2 chicken — soup — tasty — is — The.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 what should we eat to stay healthy
- 2 drink water to stay hydrated

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

“School rules”

(homework — respect — careful)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1

Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

① n_m_

② z__

③ __and

④ k_t_

(B) Reading

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

① He is very; he can carry heavy things.

a) sad

b) scared

c) strong

② A can damage your computer.

a) virus

b) tablet

c) homework

③ Don't near the street.

a) run

b) runs

c) running

④ Sara cooked by

a) myself

b) herself

c) himself

⑤ We should protect and all living things.

a) nature

b) machines

c) buildings

⑥ I help you with your homework.

a) will

b) am

c) must

③ Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(brave – scared – ladder)

The firefighter is a hero because he saves people. He is very (1)..... .
He climbed a (2)..... to rescue people. One day, he goes into a burning house. He saved a little boy who was very scared.

④ Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3



①

wrpaosds



②

iabthat

③



ploolispl

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Amira likes watching TV with her family. Sometimes, she plays games on the internet. Her brother uses the phone to call his friends every evening. At school, Amira wrote a story about smart homes and showed it to her teacher. She dreams of having a smart home one day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 Amira likes watching with her family.
a) phone b) TV c) menu
- 2 Her uses the phone.
a) teacher b) brother c) mother

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Amira write about?
- 4 What does she dream of?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 1

- 1 my – I – won't – share – password.
- 2 smart – is – very – The teacher.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 how do we cross the street safely
- 2 the airplane is flying high in the sky

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Lunch at school"

(sandwich – juice – snack)

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening

1



Listen and write the missing letter(s): — استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص: —

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

1

br_v_

2

s__

3

__ip

4

c__k

(B) Reading

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: —

3

1

A/An is a big area of salty water.

a) forest

b) ocean

c) desert

2

Birds sit in the to keep their babies safe.

a) bread

b) nest

c) uniform

3

Elephants climb trees.

a) can

b) can't

c) must

4

She has orange.

a) a

b) some

c) an

5

Friends should always each other.

a) support

b) ignore

c) fight

6

We need milk.

a) some

b) a

c) an

3

Read and complete with the words below: — اقرأ وأكمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية: —

1

(sprayed – truck – proudly)

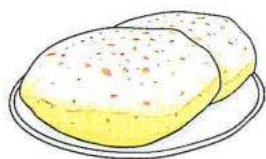
Firefighters help keep people safe. The firefighter climbed the tall ladder quickly. He (1)..... water on the fire to put it out. Everyone watched him (2)..... . Finally, he drove the fire truck and went away.

4

Look and rearrange the letters to make a word: — انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة: —

3

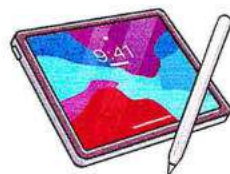
1

reab**d**

2

ven**t**e

3

eat**t**bl

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

One day, a boy saw his friend fall down. He quickly ran to help him stand up. The boy was a real hero because he was brave and did not feel scared. He called a teacher to make sure his friend was safe. Everyone clapped for him and said, "Well done!"

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1 The boy wanted to
a) help his friend b) play a game c) finish homework
- 2 The boy was a real
a) teacher b) hero c) doctor

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why was the boy a hero?
- 4 Who did the boy call after helping his friend?

(C) Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة: 1

- 1 job – a hard – has – My father.
- 2 the ocean – in – swims – The dolphin.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي: 4

- 1 how do you stay safe
- 2 the children are playing games

8 Write a paragraph of THREE sentences (15 words) using the words below: 7

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل (15 كلمة) باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

"Different habitats"

(forest – animals – survive)

.....

.....

.....

A. Language Functions

6



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: — استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:
 للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

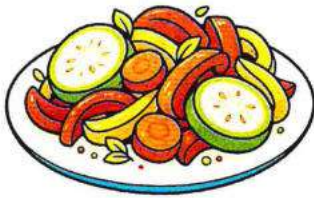
- 1 Some things can be (**dangerous** – hard – easy), like fire.
- 2 In an (**emergency** – energy – elephant), we should ask an adult for help.
- 3 Following rules keeps everyone (**safe** – sleepy – hungry).

B. Reading

8

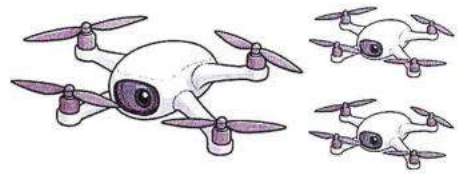
2 Fill in the missing letters: — املأ الحروف الناقصة:

1



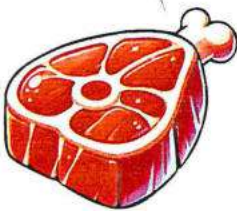
ve_eta_les

2



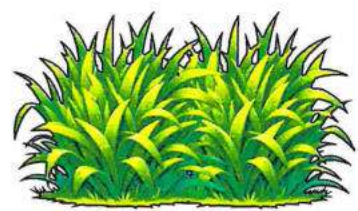
d_o_es

3



m__t

4



g__ss

C. Vocabulary and Structures

8

3 Choose the correct answer: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We follow the (**rules** – danger – careful) to keep everyone safe at home.
- 2 (**Don't** – Doesn't – Didn't) run in the street.
- 3 First, I brush my teeth, (**than** – the – then) I go to school.
- 4 Firefighters are trained to help during an (**picnic** – emergency – visit).

D. Writing

4

4 Punctuate the following: _____: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 my cat has a fluffy tail

2 everyone in the car must wear a seat belt

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

1 must – We – trash – not – throw – in the street.

.....

2 salad – dinner – had – for – We.

.....

3 many – tablet – has – apps – My.

.....

4 has – The squirrel – coat – a furry.

.....

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“My teacher”

(kind – support – inspire)

.....

.....

.....

A. Language Functions

6



1

Listen and choose the correct answer: — استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:
 للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Mazen wakes up (early – late – slowly) every morning.
- 2 He eats a (healthy – unhealthy – sweet) breakfast.
- 3 He goes to school, studies hard, and plays with his (friends – toys – pets).

B. Reading

8

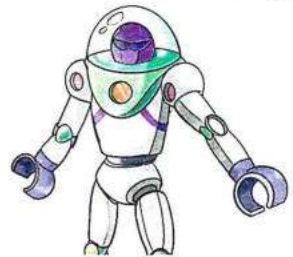
2 Fill in the missing letters: — املأ الحروف الناقصة:

1



h__f

2



ro_o_

3



str__t

4



c__k

C. Vocabulary and Structures

8

3 Choose the correct answer: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Birds have (claws – fur – feathers) to help them fly.
- 2 You must wear a (helmet – scarf – bag) when you ride a motorbike.
- 3 Do you want milk (but – and – or) juice?
- 4 The teacher told the students to help (himself – themselves – myself).

D. Writing

4

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 they take photos with their camera

2 i download games on my tablet

8

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: —

1 keyboard – type – They – the – on.

2 play – won't – games – I – night – at.

3 the floor – A – can – clean – robot.

4 books – stories – I – and – like.

6

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“The firefighter”
(uniform – strong – rescue)

A. Language Functions

6



1

Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Malek is (weak – brave – tall).
- 2 He is very smart and helps (himself – no one – everyone).
- 3 One day, he got a (car – medal – crown) for his good work.

B. Reading

8

2 Fill in the missing letters: املأ الحروف الناقصة:

1



h__t

2



__op

3



ir

4



scr__n

C. Vocabulary and Structures

8

3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We eat (yogurt – rice – pizza) with honey in the morning.
- 2 The TV was off, (but – and – or) now it works.
- 3 Eating too much (chocolate – fruit – salad) is not healthy.
- 4 I want (a – an – some) apple.

D. Writing

4

4 Punctuate the following: _____: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 would you like ice cream or chocolate

2 a virus can harm your computer

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

1 smart – kind – is – A leader – and.

.....

2 gives – My – medicine – me – mom.

.....

3 desert – in – Camels – live – the.

.....

4 trees – the – can – Monkeys – climb.

.....

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“Technology in my life”

(my tablet – screen – apps)

.....

.....

.....

A. Language Functions

6



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Animals live in different (homes – habitats – schools).
- 2 Some animals live in the (forest – park – house).
- 3 A shelter keeps animals (warm – dangerous – safe).

B. Reading

8

2 Fill in the missing letters: املأ الحروف الناقصة:



ath_e_e



f_ _



ir



ta_l_t

C. Vocabulary and Structures

8

3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I made this cake by (myself – himself – herself).
- 2 I (stay – exercise – clean) every morning to stay strong.
- 3 The (computer – TV – tablet) is small and easy to carry.
- 4 First, I wash my hands, (than – then – their) I eat.

D. Writing

4

4 Punctuate the following:ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 bread, rice, and pasta give us energy

2 i take a rest when I am sick

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة: —

8

1 does – giraffe – the – Where – live?

.....

2 dinner – my family – I – eat – with.

.....

3 forest – A – lives – lion – the – in.

.....

4 The – itself – washed – cat.

.....

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“Healthy food”

(breakfast – milk – eggs)

.....

.....

.....

A. Language Functions

6

1



Listen and choose the correct answer: — استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب.

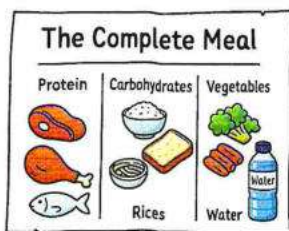
- ① Ali is a brave (doctor – firefighter – policeman).
- ② He jumped into the (car – bus – fire truck).
- ③ He saved the little (boy – girl – sister) from the smoke.

B. Reading

8

2 Fill in the missing letters: — املأ الحروف الناقصة:

1



m-n-

2



f__d

3



s_ro_g

4



me_i_ine

C. Vocabulary and Structures

8

3 Choose the correct answer: — اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① We read a book (but – and – or) played a game yesterday.
- ② We can do it by (myself – ourselves – yourself).
- ③ My sister is (helpful – brave – bad) because she helps her friends.
- ④ Tigers use their sharp (claws – hooves – paws) to catch food.

D. Writing

4

4 Punctuate the following: _____: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 the menu shows all the food in the restaurant

2 children should exercise every day to be strong

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: — أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

8

1 I – games – my tablet – on – play.

2 me – Please – some – give – water.

3 every – The – practices – day – athlete.

4 soup – salty – is – The – too.

6 Write THREE sentences using the following guiding elements:

6

اكتب ثلاث جمل باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

“A hero you know”

(team – Mo Salah – inspires)

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

Unit 1 Safety

Lesson 2 Checkpoint

- ① tree ② sleep ③ grass ④ stop

Practice on Lesson 2

- ① train ② trip ③ grab ④ step

Unit 1 Test Yourself

- ① grow ② stop ③ trap ④ grab

Unit 1 Al-Azhar Corner

Omar was riding his bike. He wore his helmet. He saw a red sign and stopped.

Unit 2 Food and Health

Lesson 2 Checkpoint

- ① cheese ② meat ③ green ④ beans

Practice on Lesson 2

- ① eat ② see ③ green ④ cheese

Unit 2 Test Yourself

- ① sweet ② green ③ eat ④ cheese

Unit 2 Al-Azhar Corner

Ali eats vegetables and nuts to stay healthy. He drinks milk with his breakfast. He does exercise every morning. He likes to eat healthy food and stay strong.

Al-Adwaa Revision - February

- A ① slip ② stop ③ cheese ④ beans

- B ① see ② meat ③ step ④ grass

Al-Adwaa Tests - February

Model 1

- ① green ② eat ③ stone ④ slide

Model 2

- ① grab ② truck ③ sweet ④ meat

Model 3 Al-Azhar

When we walk near the street, we must be very careful. It can be dangerous if we run or play close to cars. We should always look right and left before we cross the street.

Unit 3 Heroes Around Us

Practice on Lesson 2

- ① name ② brave ③ kite ④ hope

Unit 3 Test Yourself

- ① sale ② vase ③ make ④ name

Unit 3 Al-Azhar Corner

Hussein is a hero. He is brave and kind. He helps people in trouble. Everyone likes him.

Unit 4 Living with Technology

Lesson 2 Checkpoint

- ① letter ② guitar ③ horn ④ park

Practice on Lesson 2

- ① teacher ② corn ③ player ④ star

Unit 4 Test Yourself

- ① guitar ② short ③ storm ④ teacher

Unit 4 Al-Azhar Corner

Farida has a computer and a tablet. She uses the computer for her schoolwork. She likes robots because they are smart and fun.

Al-Adwaa Revision - March

- A ① computer ② sale ③ hope ④ car

- B ① letter ② short ③ horn ④ kite

Al-Adwaa Tests - March

Model 1

- ① teacher ② make ③ star ④ car

Model 2

- 1 storm 2 farmer 3 name 4 park

Model 3 Al-Azhar

Doctor Ali wears a special uniform to show he is a doctor. He checks patients and gives them the help they need. He sometimes works with a team to give the best care.

Unit 5 Animals and Habitats

Lesson 1 Checkpoint

- 1 moon 2 look 3 food 4 zoo

Practice on Lesson 1

- 1 look 2 book 3 pool 4 foot

Lesson 3 Checkpoint

- 1 grow 2 now 3 owl 4 window

Practice on Lesson 3

- 1 snow 2 owl 3 brown 4 cow

Unit 5 Test Yourself

- 1 owl 2 foot 3 throw 4 window

Unit 5 Al-Azhar Corner

Animals live in different habitats. Some animals live in the forest, some in the desert and others in the ocean. All animals need a shelter to survive. We must protect nature and keep it safe.

Unit 6 (Story) The Honest Choice

Practice on Story

- 1 backpack 2 break 3 choice 4 nervous

General Practice on Unit 1

- A 1 slip 2 grass 3 stop 4 trap

- B 1 star 2 green 3 train 4 step

General Practice on Unit 2

- A 1 meat 2 cheese 3 see 4 sweet

- B 1 fries 2 beans 3 green 4 meal

General Practice on Unit 3

- A 1 brave 2 kite 3 sale 4 name

- B 1 made 2 hope 3 vase 4 make

General Practice on Unit 4

- A 1 player 2 star 3 horn 4 short

- B 1 storm 2 guitar 3 fork 4 teacher

General Practice on Unit 5

- A 1 cow 2 food 3 window 4 look

- B 1 foot 2 owl 3 snow 4 moon

Final Tests

Test 1

- 1 moon 2 sleep 3 made 4 teacher

Test 2

- 1 grass 2 storm 3 grow 4 meal

Test 3

- 1 truck 2 cheese 3 step 4 farmer

Test 4

- 1 book 2 snow 3 slip 4 star

Test 5

- 1 grab 2 train 3 eat 4 see

Test 6

- 1 green 2 park 3 brave 4 now

Test 7

- 1 look 2 window 3 owl 4 stop

Test 8

- 1 pool 2 star 3 cow 4 beans

Test 9

- 1 sweet 2 guitar 3 see 4 stone

Test 10

- 1 player 2 short 3 vase 4 trap

Test 11

- ① sale ② letter ③ car ④ slide

Test 12

- ① slow ② trip ③ meat ④ corn

Test 13

- ① foot ② tree ③ fork ④ brown

Test 14

- ① name ② zoo ③ stand ④ kite

Test 15

- ① brave ② see ③ slip ④ cook

Al-Azhar Tests

Test 1

We must follow safety rules at home and at school. Some things can be dangerous, like fire. In an emergency, we should ask an adult for help. Following the rules keeps everyone safe.

Test 2

Mazen wakes up early every morning. He eats a healthy breakfast with milk and vegetables. He goes to school, studies hard, and plays with his friends. In the evening, Mazen does some exercise and sleeps early to stay strong and healthy.

Test 3

Malek is a hero. He is brave, strong, and kind. He is also very smart and helps everyone. One day, he got a medal for his good work.

Test 4

Animals live in different habitats. Some animals live in the forest, and some live in the ocean. Many animals live in the wild, where they find food and shelter. A shelter keeps them warm and dry.

Test 5

Ali is a brave firefighter. One afternoon, there was a fire in a building, he jumped into the fire truck and drove through the streets. He sprayed water and saved the little boy from the smoke.

Writing Answers

Unit 1 Safety

Lesson 1

How to stay safe

Always be careful when you play. You must follow the rules. Not following the rules can be dangerous.

Lesson 3

Staying safe in the street

Always wear your seat belt in the car. Learn first aid for emergencies. Listen to the policeman because he keeps us safe.

Lesson 4

Staying safe

If there's an emergency, you must call for help. You can also talk to an adult. We must follow the rules to stay safe.

Test Yourself

Safety guide

To stay safe, always wear a helmet when you ride a bike. If there's an emergency, you can call an adult. Wear a seat belt in the car.

Unit 2 Food and Health

Lesson 2

Healthy and unhealthy foods

Drinking milk gives me energy. Eating too much cake is unhealthy. I eat healthy foods every day.

Lesson 3

How you take care of yourself

I eat healthy food. I like to exercise every morning. I keep my hands clean and always wash them.

Lesson 4

My healthy plan

I eat a healthy breakfast. I have a small snack. I always have yogurt with honey at night.

Test Yourself

A healthy meal

I make a healthy menu for today. I love eating healthy food. My favorite lunch is chicken with rice.

Unit 3 Heroes Around Us

Lesson 1

A hero

A firefighter is a hero. He is brave. Every morning, he puts on his helmet and uniform.

Lesson 2

Police officers

Police officers are helpful people. They wear a uniform. They work hard to protect people and keep the city safe.

Lesson 3

Being a good friend

My friend always supports me when I'm sad. He's honest and never lies. He inspires me to do my best.

Lesson 4

An Egyptian athlete

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She trained hard, practiced, and never gave up. She won a gold medal for Egypt.

Test Yourself

Doctors

Doctors help sick people feel better. They wear a special uniform. They check patients and give them the help they need.

Unit 4 Living with Technology

Lesson 1

Technology in my life

I use my phone to call my friends. I use a computer to study. Technology helps me learn.

Lesson 3

Using technology safely

Always keep your password secret. Never tell strangers about your information. A virus can damage your device.

Lesson 4

A smart home

My robot helps me clean the house. We use drones to deliver packages. I must use technology in a balanced way.

Test Yourself

Using technology

I love using technology. Drones can take pictures from the sky. The smart home can warm the food for us. The robot can help me clean the room.

Unit 5 Animals and Habitats

Lesson 1

My favorite wild animal

My favorite wild animal is the tiger. It eats meat and lives in the forest. Tigers are very strong and fast.

Lesson 2

My cat

My cat is very cute. She has sharp paws and a soft, fluffy tail. She likes to play.

Lesson 4

Protecting plants and animals

We must keep the park clean. Everyone should respect all living things in nature. Protecting plants and animals is very important.

Test Yourself

Animals

We should always be kind to animals. We must protect them and keep their homes clean. Animals should have a safe place to live.

Dictation Copybook

كراسة تسميع الكلمات



Unit 1 Dictation

Lesson 1

.....	حريص	.....	خطير
.....	يؤلم / يؤذي	.....	قواعد
.....	طوارئ	.....	أمن

Lesson 2

.....	يعبر الطريق	.....	شارع
.....	خوذة	.....	قف
.....	يمشى	.....	ينتظر
.....	غريب	.....	إشارات

Lesson 3

.....	حزام الأمان	.....	ضابط شرطة
.....	موقد	.....	سيارة الإسعاف
.....	دخان	.....	الإسعافات الأولية

Lesson 4

.....	السلامة تأتي أولاً	.....	دليل السلامة
.....	يتحدث	.....	يطلب المساعدة

Unit 2 Dictation

Lesson 1

.....	فاكهة	.....	طعام
.....	ماء	.....	لحم
.....	سكر	.....	خضراوات

Lesson 2

.....	جبنه	.....	لبن
.....	مكسرات	.....	أرز
.....	خبز	.....	بيض
.....	سمك	.....	دجاج
.....	صودا	.....	حلوى
.....	مصاصات	.....	بطاطس شيبسى

Lesson 3

.....	يستريح	.....	يتدرب
.....	مريض	.....	دواء
.....	يعتنى بـ	.....	ينسى

Lesson 4

.....	عسل	.....	زبادى
.....	جائع	.....	حساء (شوربة)
.....	وجبة الغداء	.....	وجبة الإفطار
.....	وجبة	.....	وجبة العشاء
.....	ألم بالمعدة	.....	وجبة خفيفة
.....	قائمة الطعام	.....	نصيحة

Lesson 1

.....	شجاع	.....	بطل
.....	قوى	.....	ذكى
.....	رجل إطفاء	.....	عطوف

Lesson 2

.....	ينقذ	.....	متعاون / مفيد
.....	يدرس / يُعلم	.....	زى موحد
.....	خائف	.....	طريق
.....	على الفور	.....	تائه
.....	ممتن	.....	ممتن

Lesson 3

.....	شجاعة	.....	يُدعم
.....	يُلهم / يحفز	.....	فيضان
.....	قائد	.....	يكذب
.....	قرية	.....	مكان آمن

Lesson 4

.....	يحترم	.....	شخص رياضى
.....	ميدالية	.....	حدث
.....	مشهور	.....	

Unit 4 Dictation

Lesson 1

.....	تابلت (جهاز لوحى)	.....	حاسب آلى
.....	واجبات مدرسية	.....	تليفون
.....	إنسان آلى	.....	تلفاز

Lesson 2

.....	ألعاب	.....	يبحث
.....	تطبيقات	.....	كاميرا
.....	بريد إلكترونى	.....	معلومات

Lesson 3

.....	زرد	.....	شاشة
.....	كلمة المرور	.....	هام
.....	خاص	.....	لوحة مفاتيح
.....	فيروس	.....	سر
.....	يشارك	.....	حساب
		.....	يصلح

Lesson 4

.....	منزلى ذكى	.....	طائرة بدون طيار
.....	هاتف ذكى	.....	يطلب
.....	التكنولوجيا	.....	الإنترنت

Lesson 1

.....	صحراء	.....	موطن
.....	ظل	.....	ثعلب
.....	غابة	.....	محيط
.....	خاص	.....	مثالي
.....	فضولي	.....	بري
.....	مياه مالحة	.....	جاف

Lesson 2

.....	كف/ قدم حيوان	.....	فرو
.....	حافر	.....	ريش
.....	عش	.....	ذيل

Lesson 3

.....	يطير	.....	مأوى
.....	يعوم	.....	يبقى على قيد الحياة
		.....	يزحف

Lesson 4

.....	يحترم	.....	الطبيعة
.....	يحمي	.....	ينظف
.....	يتأكد	.....	قمامة
.....	يلقى (يرمي)	.....	يشارك